
**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**
Washington, D.C. 20549

AMENDMENT NO. 1

to

**FORM F-10
REGISTRATION STATEMENT
UNDER
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

ZYMEWORKS INC.

(Exact name of Registrant as specified in its charter)

British Columbia, Canada
(Province or other Jurisdiction
of Incorporation or Organization)

2834
(Primary Standard Industrial
Classification Code Number)

47-2569713
(I.R.S. Employer
Identification No.)

**Suite 540 – 1385 West 8th Avenue
Vancouver, British Columbia
Canada V6H 3V9
(604) 678-1388**

(Address and telephone number of Registrant's principal executive offices)

**The Corporation Trust Company
Corporation Trust Center
1209 Orange Street
Wilmington, DE 19801
(302) 658-7581**

(Name, address and telephone number of agent for service in the United States)

Copies to:

Riccardo A. Leofanti, Esq.
Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher & Flom LLP
222 Bay Street, Suite 1750, P.O. Box 258
Toronto, Ontario, Canada M5K 1J5
(416) 777-4700

Joseph A. Garcia
Jamie Kariya
Blake, Cassels & Graydon LLP
595 Burrard Street, Suite 2600
Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada V7X 1L3
(604) 631-3300

Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale of the securities to the public:
From time to time after this Registration Statement becomes effective.

Province of British Columbia, Canada
(Principal jurisdiction regulating this offering)

It is proposed that this filing shall become effective (check appropriate box):

- A. Upon filing with the Commission, pursuant to Rule 467(a) (if in connection with an offering being made contemporaneously in the United States and Canada).
- B. At some future date (check the appropriate box below):
- pursuant to Rule 467(b) on () at ().
 - pursuant to Rule 467(b) on () at () because the securities regulatory authority in the review jurisdiction has issued a receipt or notification of clearance on ().
 - pursuant to Rule 467(b) as soon as practicable after notification of the Commission by the Registrant or the Canadian securities regulatory authority of the review jurisdiction that a receipt or notification of clearance has been issued with respect hereto.
 - after the filing of the next amendment to this Form (if preliminary material is being filed).

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to the home jurisdiction's shelf prospectus offering procedures, check the following box.

The Registrant hereby amends this Registration Statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the Registration Statement shall become effective as provided in Rule 467 under the Securities Act or on such date as the Commission, acting pursuant to Section 8(a) of the Securities Act, may determine.

PART I

INFORMATION REQUIRED TO BE DELIVERED TO OFFEREES OR PURCHASERS

[Table of Contents](#)

A copy of this amended and restated preliminary short form prospectus has been filed with the securities regulatory authorities in each of the provinces and territories of Canada, other than Québec, and a copy of this preliminary short form prospectus has been filed with the securities regulatory authority in Québec, but has not yet become final for the purposes of the sale of securities. Information contained in this amended and restated preliminary short form prospectus and this preliminary short form prospectus may not be complete and may have to be amended. The securities may not be sold until a receipt for the short form prospectus is obtained from the securities regulatory authorities.

This amended and restated preliminary short form prospectus and this preliminary short form prospectus is a base shelf prospectus. This amended and restated preliminary short form prospectus has been filed under legislation in all provinces and territories of Canada, other than Québec, and this preliminary short form prospectus has been filed under legislation in Québec, that permits certain information about these securities to be determined after this prospectus has become final and that permits the omission from this prospectus of that information. The legislation requires the delivery to purchasers of a prospectus supplement containing the omitted information within a specified period of time after agreeing to purchase any of these securities.

No securities regulatory authority has expressed an opinion about these securities and it is an offence to claim otherwise. This preliminary short form prospectus constitutes a public offering of these securities only in those jurisdictions where they may be lawfully offered for sale and therein only by persons permitted to sell such securities.

Information has been incorporated by reference in this short form prospectus from documents filed with securities commissions or similar authorities in Canada. Copies of the documents incorporated herein by reference may be obtained on request without charge from the Corporate Secretary of Zymeworks Inc. at 1385 West 8th Avenue, Suite 540, Vancouver, BC, Canada, V6H 3V9, telephone: (604) 678-1388, and are also available electronically at www.sedar.com and www.sec.gov.

**AMENDED AND RESTATED PRELIMINARY SHORT FORM BASE SHELF PROSPECTUS IN
EACH OF THE PROVINCES AND TERRITORIES OF CANADA, OTHER THAN QUÉBEC
Amending and Restating the Preliminary Short Form
Base Shelf Prospectus dated May 2, 2018
And
PRELIMINARY SHORT FORM BASE SHELF PROSPECTUS IN QUÉBEC**

New Issue and Secondary Offering

May 18, 2018



ZYMEWORKS INC.

US\$250,000,000

Common Shares

Preferred Shares

Debt Securities

Warrants

Subscription Receipts

Units

This prospectus relates to the offering for sale from time to time, during the 25-month period that this prospectus, including any amendments hereto, remains effective, of the securities listed above in one or more series or issuances, with a total offering price of such securities, in the aggregate, of up to US\$250,000,000. The securities may be offered by us or by our securityholders. The securities may be offered separately or together, in amounts, at prices and on terms to be determined based on market conditions at the time of the sale and set forth in an accompanying prospectus supplement.

Our common shares are listed on the New York Stock Exchange ("NYSE") and on the Toronto Stock Exchange ("TSX") under the symbol "ZYME". On May 17, 2018, the closing price per share of our common shares was US\$17.34 on the NYSE and C\$22.11 on the TSX. Unless otherwise specified in an applicable prospectus supplement, our preferred shares, debt securities, warrants, subscription receipts and units will not be listed on any securities or stock exchange or on any automated dealer quotation system. **There is currently no market through which our securities, other than our common shares, may be sold and purchasers may not be able to resell such securities purchased under this prospectus. This may affect the pricing of our securities, other than our common shares, in the secondary market, the transparency and availability of trading prices, the liquidity of these securities and the extent of issuer regulation.** See "Risk Factors".

Our head office is located at 1385 West 8th Avenue, Suite 540, Vancouver, BC, Canada, V6H 3V9 and our registered office is located at Suite 2600, 595 Burrard Street, Three Bentall Centre, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada, V7X 1L3.

[Table of Contents](#)

All information permitted under securities legislation to be omitted from this prospectus will be contained in one or more prospectus supplements that will be delivered to purchasers together with this prospectus. Each prospectus supplement will be incorporated by reference into this prospectus for the purposes of securities legislation as of the date of the prospectus supplement and only for the purposes of the distribution of the securities to which the prospectus supplement pertains. You should read this prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement carefully before you invest in any securities issued pursuant to this prospectus. Our securities may be sold pursuant to this prospectus through underwriters or dealers or directly or through agents designated from time to time at amounts and prices and other terms determined by us or any selling securityholders. In connection with any underwritten offering of securities, the underwriters may over-allot or effect transactions which stabilize or maintain the market price of the securities offered. Such transactions, if commenced, may discontinue at any time. See “Plan of Distribution”. A prospectus supplement will set out the names of any underwriters, dealers, agents or selling securityholders involved in the sale of our securities, the amounts, if any, to be purchased by underwriters, the plan of distribution for such securities, including the net proceeds we expect to receive from the sale of such securities, if any, the amounts and prices at which such securities are sold and the compensation of such underwriters, dealers or agents.

Investing in our securities involves a high degree of risk. You should carefully read the “[Risk Factors](#)” section beginning on page 16 of this prospectus.

We are permitted under a multijurisdictional disclosure system adopted by the securities regulatory authorities in Canada and the United States to prepare this prospectus in accordance with the disclosure requirements of Canada. Prospective investors in the United States should be aware that such requirements are different from those of the United States.

Effective January 1, 2014, we adopted United States generally accepted accounting principles (“U.S. GAAP”) as the reporting standard for our consolidated financial statements and changed our reporting currency from Canadian dollars to U.S. dollars. Accordingly, the presentation of financial statements may vary in a material way from financial statements prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards. Unless otherwise indicated, all dollar amounts and references to “\$” in our financial statements are to U.S. dollars.

Owning our securities may subject you to tax consequences both in Canada and the United States. Such tax consequences are not described in this prospectus and may not be fully described in any applicable prospectus supplement. You should read the tax discussion in any prospectus supplement with respect to a particular offering and consult your own tax advisor with respect to your own particular circumstances.

Your ability to enforce civil liabilities under U.S. federal securities laws may be affected adversely because we are incorporated under the laws of British Columbia, most of our officers, some of our directors and the experts named in this prospectus are Canadian residents, and a substantial portion of our assets and the assets of those officers, directors and experts are located outside of the United States.

Neither the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”), nor any state securities regulator has approved or disapproved the securities offered hereby or passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of this prospectus. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offence.

No underwriter has been involved in the preparation of this prospectus or performed any review of the contents of this prospectus.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS	1
CAUTIONARY NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS	1
DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE	5
DOCUMENTS FILED AS PART OF THE REGISTRATION STATEMENT	7
EXCHANGE RATE INFORMATION	8
ZYMEWORKS INC.	9
OUR BUSINESS	10
RISK FACTORS	16
USE OF PROCEEDS	61
PRIOR SALES	62
MARKET FOR SECURITIES	64
EARNINGS COVERAGE	65
CONSOLIDATED CAPITALIZATION	66
DESCRIPTION OF SHARE CAPITAL	67
DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES	68
DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS	80
DESCRIPTION OF SUBSCRIPTION RECEIPTS	82
DESCRIPTION OF UNITS	83
CERTAIN INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS	84
SELLING SECURITYHOLDERS	85
PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION	86
AUDITORS, TRANSFER AGENT AND REGISTRAR	89
AGENT FOR SERVICE OF PROCESS	90
LEGAL MATTERS	91
WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION	91
ENFORCEABILITY OF CIVIL LIABILITIES	92

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

You should rely only on the information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus or any applicable prospectus supplement and on the other information included in the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part. We have not authorized anyone to provide you with different or additional information. If anyone provides you with different or additional information, you should not rely on it. We are not making an offer to sell or seeking an offer to buy the securities offered pursuant to this prospectus in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted. You should assume that the information contained in this prospectus or any applicable prospectus supplement is accurate only as of the date on the front of those documents and that information contained in any document incorporated by reference is accurate only as of the date of that document, regardless of the time of delivery of this prospectus or any applicable prospectus supplement or of any sale of our securities pursuant thereto. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since those dates.

Market data and certain industry forecasts used in this prospectus or any applicable prospectus supplement and the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus or any applicable prospectus supplement were obtained from market research, publicly available information and industry publications. We believe that these sources are generally reliable, but the accuracy and completeness of this information is not guaranteed. We have not independently verified such information, and we do not make any representation as to the accuracy of such information.

In this prospectus and any prospectus supplement, unless otherwise indicated, all dollar amounts and references to “\$” or “US\$” are to U.S. dollars and references to “C\$” are to Canadian dollars. This prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference contain translations of some Canadian dollar amounts into U.S. dollars solely for your convenience. See “Exchange Rate Information”.

In this prospectus and in any prospectus supplement, unless the context otherwise requires, references to “we”, “us”, “our” or similar terms, as well as references to “Zymeworks” or the “Company”, refer to Zymeworks Inc., either alone or together with our wholly-owned subsidiary, Zymeworks Biopharmaceuticals Inc. Furthermore, except as otherwise indicated, references to “Merck,” “Lilly,” “Celgene,” “GSK,” “Daiichi Sankyo” and “Janssen” refer to Merck Sharp & Dohme Research Ltd., Eli Lilly and Company, Celgene Corporation and Celgene Alpine Investment Co. LLC, GlaxoSmithKline Intellectual Property Development Limited, Daiichi Sankyo Co., Ltd. and Janssen Biotech, Inc., respectively.

The names Azymetric, Zymeworks, ZymeCAD and the phrase “Building Better Biologics” are our registered trademarks. Additionally, AlbuCORE, EFECT and ZymeLink are subject to our pending trademark applications. Other trademarks, product names and company names appearing in this prospectus and any prospectus supplement and documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus and any prospectus supplement are the property of their respective owners.

CAUTIONARY NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus, including the documents incorporated by reference herein, includes and incorporates by reference “forward-looking statements” within the meaning of the U.S. *Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995* and “forward-looking information” within the meaning of Canadian securities laws, or collectively, forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements include statements that may relate to our plans, objectives, goals, strategies, future events, future revenue or performance, capital expenditures, financing needs and other information that is not historical information. Many of these statements appear, in particular, under the headings “Risk Factors” and “Our Business.” Forward-looking statements can often be identified by the use of terminology such as “subject to,” “believe,” “anticipate,” “plan,” “expect,” “intend,” “estimate,” “project,” “may,” “will,” “should,” “would,” “could,” “can,” the negatives thereof, variations thereon and similar expressions, or by discussions of strategy. In addition, any statements or information that refer to expectations,

[Table of Contents](#)

beliefs, plans, projections, objectives, performance or other characterizations of future events or circumstances, including any underlying assumptions, are forward-looking. In particular, forward-looking statements in this prospectus include, but are not limited to, statements about:

- the size of our addressable markets and our ability to commercialize product candidates;
- the achievement of advances in and expansion of our therapeutic platforms and antibody engineering expertise;
- the likelihood of product candidate development and clinical trial progression, initiation or success; and
- our ability to predict and manage government regulation.

All forward-looking statements, including, without limitation, our examination of historical operating trends, are based upon our current expectations and various assumptions. Certain assumptions made in preparing the forward-looking statements include:

- our ability to manage our growth effectively;
- the absence of material adverse changes in our industry or the global economy;
- trends in our industry and markets;
- our ability to maintain good business relationships with our strategic partners;
- our ability to comply with current and future regulatory standards;
- our ability to protect our intellectual property rights;
- our continued compliance with third-party license terms and the non-infringement of third-party intellectual property rights;
- our ability to manage and integrate acquisitions;
- our ability to retain key personnel; and
- our ability to raise sufficient debt or equity financing to support our continued growth.

We believe there is a reasonable basis for our expectations and beliefs, but they are inherently uncertain. We may not realize our expectations, and our beliefs may not prove correct. Actual results could differ materially from those described or implied by such forward-looking statements. The following uncertainties and factors, among others (including those set forth under “Risk Factors”), could affect future performance and cause actual results to differ materially from those matters expressed in or implied by forward-looking statements:

- our ability to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates without significant delays;
- the predictive value of our current or planned clinical trials;
- delays with respect to the development and commercialization of our product candidates, which may cause increased costs or delay receipt of product revenue;
- our ability to enroll subjects in clinical trials and thereby complete trials on a timely basis;
- the design or our execution of clinical trials may not support regulatory approval;
- our discretion to discontinue or reprioritize the development of any of our product candidates;
- the potential for our product candidates to have undesirable side effects;
- our ability to face significant competition;
- no regulatory agency has made a determination that any of our product candidates are safe or effective for use by the general public or for any indication;

[Table of Contents](#)

- the competitive threat of biosimilar products;
- the likelihood of broad market acceptance of our product candidates;
- our ability to obtain Orphan Drug Designation or exclusivity for some or all of our product candidates;
- our ability to commercialize products outside of the United States;
- the outcome of reimbursement decisions by third-party payors relating to our products;
- our expectations with respect to the market opportunities for any product that we or our strategic partners develop;
- our ability to pursue product candidates that may be profitable or have a high likelihood of success;
- our ability to use and expand our therapeutic platforms to build a pipeline of product candidates;
- our ability to meet the requirements of ongoing regulatory review;
- the threat of product liability lawsuits against us or any of our strategic partners;
- changes in product candidate manufacturing or formulation that may result in additional costs or delay;
- the potential disruption of our business and dilution of our shareholdings associated with acquisitions and joint ventures;
- our ability to maintain existing and future strategic partnerships;
- our ability to realize the anticipated benefits of our strategic partnerships;
- our ability to secure future strategic partners;
- the potential for foreign governments to impose strict price controls;
- the risk of security breaches or data loss, which could compromise sensitive business or health information;
- current and future legislation that may increase the difficulty and cost of commercializing our product candidates;
- economic, political, regulatory and other risks associated with international operations;
- our exposure to legal and reputational penalties as a result of any of our current and future relationships with various third parties;
- our exposure to potential securities class action litigation;
- our ability to comply with export control and import laws and regulations;
- our history of significant losses since inception;
- our ability to generate revenue from product sales and achieve profitability;
- our requirement for substantial additional funding;
- the potential dilution to our shareholders associated with future financings;
- unstable market and economic conditions;
- currency fluctuations and changes in foreign currency exchange rates;
- restrictions on our ability to seek financing, which may be imposed by future debt;
- our intention to rely on third-party manufacturers to produce our clinical product candidate supplies;
- our reliance on third parties to oversee clinical trials of our product candidates and, in some cases, maintain regulatory files for those product candidates;

[Table of Contents](#)

- our reliance on the performance of independent clinical investigators and contract research organizations (“CRO”);
- our reliance on third parties for various operational and administrative aspects of our business including our reliance on third parties’ cloud-based software platforms;
- our ability to operate without infringing the patents and other proprietary rights of third parties;
- our ability to obtain and enforce patent protection for our product candidates and related technology;
- our patents could be found invalid or unenforceable if challenged;
- our intellectual property rights may not necessarily provide us with competitive advantages;
- we may become involved in expensive and time-consuming patent lawsuits;
- we may be unable to protect the confidentiality of our proprietary information;
- the risk that the duration of our patents will not adequately protect our competitive position;
- our ability to obtain protection under the Hatch-Waxman Amendments and similar foreign legislation;
- our ability to comply with procedural and administrative requirements relating to our patents;
- the risk of claims challenging the inventorship of our patents and other intellectual property;
- our intellectual property rights for some of our product candidates are dependent on the abilities of third parties to assert and defend such rights;
- patent reform legislation and court decisions can diminish the value of patents in general, thereby impairing our ability to protect our products;
- we may not be able to protect our intellectual property rights throughout the world;
- we will require Food and Drug Association (“FDA”) approval for any proposed product candidate names and any failure or delay associated with such approval may adversely affect our business;
- the risk of employee misconduct including noncompliance with regulatory standards and insider trading;
- our ability to market our products in a manner that does not violate the law and subject us to civil or criminal penalties;
- if we do not comply with laws regulating the protection of the environment and health and human safety, our business could be adversely affected;
- if securities or industry analysts do not publish research or publish inaccurate or unfavorable research about our business, our share price and trading volume could decline;
- our ability to retain key executives and attract and retain qualified personnel;
- our ability to manage organizational growth; and
- additional costs and expenses related to the anticipated change from foreign private issuer to U.S. domestic issuer status and our decision to voluntarily comply with certain U.S. domestic issuer reporting obligations before we are required to do so.

Consequently, forward-looking statements should be regarded solely as our current plans, estimates and beliefs. You should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. We cannot guarantee future results, events, levels of activity, performance or achievements. We do not undertake and specifically decline any obligation to update, republish or revise forward-looking statements to reflect future events or circumstances or to reflect the occurrences of unanticipated events, except as required by law.

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

Information has been incorporated by reference in this prospectus from documents filed with securities commissions or similar authorities in Canada which have also been filed with, or furnished to, the SEC. Copies of the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus and not delivered with this prospectus may be obtained on request without charge from the Corporate Secretary of Zymeworks Inc. at 1385 West 8th Avenue, Suite 540, Vancouver, BC, Canada, V6H 3V9, telephone: (604) 678-1388 or by accessing the disclosure documents through the Internet on SEDAR, at www.sedar.com. Documents filed with, or furnished to, the SEC are available through EDGAR, at www.sec.gov.

The following documents, filed with the securities commissions or similar regulatory authorities in each of the provinces and territories of Canada and filed with, or furnished to, the SEC are specifically incorporated by reference into, and form an integral part of, this prospectus:

- our annual report on Form 10-K dated March 14, 2018 for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017;
- our audited consolidated financial statements as at and for the years ended December 31, 2017, together with the notes thereto and the auditor's reports thereon;
- our management's discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations for the year ended December 31, 2017;
- our quarterly report on Form 10-Q dated May 1, 2018 for the three month period ended March 31, 2018;
- our unaudited interim consolidated financial statements as at and for the three month period ended March 31, 2018 and 2017;
- our management's discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations for the three month period ended March 31, 2018;
- our Current Reports on Form 8-K dated March 14, April 17, April 23, April 25, April 30, May 1, May 10, May 16 and May 18, 2018, respectively; and
- each of the following material change reports:
 - (i) our report dated March 20, 2018 with respect to the Company's announcement that ZW49 is the first product candidate selected for clinical development utilizing the ZymeLink antibody drug conjugate platform;
 - (ii) our report dated April 17, 2018 with respect to preclinical data on ZW49;
 - (iii) our report dated April 24, 2018 with respect to Celgene Corporation having exercised its right to expand its collaboration agreement for the research, development, and commercialization of bispecific antibody therapeutics using Zymeworks' Azymetric platform;
 - (iv) our report dated April 25, 2018 regarding the abstract highlighting new data from the Company's adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial for ZW25 being selected for an oral presentation at the American Society of Clinical Oncology; and
 - (v) our report dated May 18, 2018 regarding a new license agreement with Daiichi Sankyo pursuant to which Daiichi Sankyo will acquire licenses to the Company's Azymetric and EFECT platforms to develop two additional bispecific antibody therapeutics.

Any documents of the type described in Section 11.1 of Form 44-101F1 *Short Form Prospectuses* filed by the Company with a securities commission or similar authority in any province or territory of Canada subsequent to the date of this short form prospectus and prior to the expiry of this prospectus, or the completion of the issuance of securities pursuant hereto, will be deemed to be incorporated by reference into this prospectus.

[Table of Contents](#)

In addition, to the extent that any document or information incorporated by reference into this prospectus is filed with the SEC pursuant to the *U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934*, as amended (the “Exchange Act”), after the date of this prospectus, such document or information will be deemed to be incorporated by reference as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part, except that we are not incorporating any information included in a Current Report on Form 8-K that has been or will be furnished (and not filed) with the SEC, unless such information is expressly incorporated herein.

A prospectus supplement containing the specific terms of any offering of our securities will be delivered to purchasers of our securities together with this prospectus and will be deemed to be incorporated by reference in this prospectus as of the date of the prospectus supplement and only for the purposes of the offering of our securities to which that prospectus supplement pertains.

Any statement contained in this prospectus or in a document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference in this prospectus will be deemed to be modified or superseded for purposes of this prospectus to the extent that a statement contained herein or in any other subsequently filed document that also is or is deemed to be incorporated by reference herein modifies or supersedes such statement. The modifying or superseding statement need not state that it has modified or superseded a prior statement or include any other information set forth in the document that it modifies or supersedes. The making of a modifying or superseding statement is not to be deemed an admission for any purposes that the modified or superseded statement, when made, constituted a misrepresentation, an untrue statement of material fact or an omission to state a material fact that is required to be stated or is necessary to make a statement not misleading in light of the circumstances in which it was made. Any statement so modified or superseded will not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus.

Upon our filing of a new annual report on Form 10-K and the related annual financial statements and management’s discussion and analysis with applicable securities regulatory authorities during the currency of this prospectus, the previous annual report on Form 10-K, the previous annual financial statements and management’s discussion and analysis and all quarterly financial statements, supplemental information, material change reports and information circulars filed prior to the commencement of our financial year in which the new annual report on Form 10-K is filed will be deemed no longer to be incorporated into this prospectus for purposes of future offers and sales of our securities under this prospectus. Upon interim consolidated financial statements and the accompanying management’s discussion and analysis and material change reports being filed by us with the applicable securities regulatory authorities during the duration of this prospectus, all interim consolidated financial statements and the accompanying management’s discussion and analysis and material change reports filed prior to the new interim consolidated financial statements shall be deemed no longer to be incorporated into this prospectus for purposes of future offers and sales of securities under this prospectus.

References to our website in any documents that are incorporated by reference into this prospectus do not incorporate by reference the information on such website into this prospectus, and we disclaim any such incorporation by reference.

DOCUMENTS FILED AS PART OF THE REGISTRATION STATEMENT

The following documents have been or will be filed with the SEC as part of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part: (i) the documents listed under the heading "Documents Incorporated by Reference"; (ii) powers of attorney from our directors and officers; (iii) the consent of KPMG LLP; and (iv) the form of indenture relating to the debt securities that may be issued under this prospectus. A copy of the form of warrant agreement or subscription receipt agreement, as applicable, will be filed by post-effective amendments or by incorporation by reference to documents filed or furnished with the SEC under the Exchange Act.

EXCHANGE RATE INFORMATION

We express all amounts in this prospectus in U.S. dollars, except where otherwise indicated. References to “\$” and “US\$” are to U.S. dollars and references to “C\$” are to Canadian dollars. The following table sets forth, for the periods indicated, the high, low, average and end of period rates of exchange for one U.S. dollar, expressed in Canadian dollars, published by the Bank of Canada during the respective periods.

The following table sets forth certain exchange rates based on the Bank of Canada noon exchange rate (for dates prior to March 1, 2017) or the Bank of Canada daily exchange rate (for dates on or after March 1, 2017). As of May 1, 2017, the Bank of Canada no longer publishes updated data for exchange rates published under previous methodologies, including daily noon and closing rates as well as high and low exchange rates.

	Year Ended December 31,			Three Months Ended March 31,	
	2015	2016	2017	2017	2018
Highest rate during the period	1.3990	1.4589	1.3743	1.3513	1.3088
Lowest rate during the period	1.1728	1.2544	1.2128	1.3016	1.2288
Average exchange rate for the period ⁽¹⁾	1.2907	1.3231	1.2986	1.3238	1.2647
Rate at the end of the period	1.3840	1.3427	1.2545	1.3310	1.2894

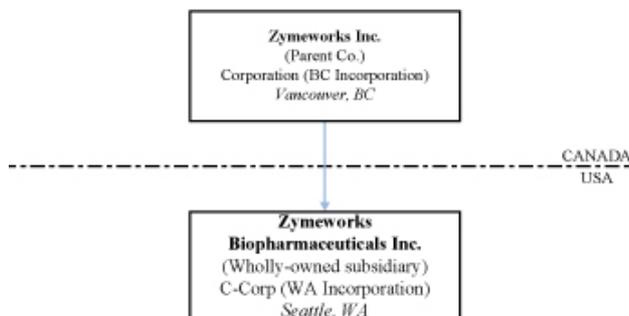
(1) Determined by averaging the rates on the last day of each month during the respective period.

On March 29, 2018, the Bank of Canada daily average rate of exchange was \$1.00 = C\$1.2894. On May 17, 2018, the Bank of Canada daily average rate of exchange was \$1.00 = C\$1.2801.

ZYMEWORKS INC.

We were incorporated on September 8, 2003 under the *Canada Business Corporations Act* (“CBCA”), under the name “Zymeworks Inc.” On October 22, 2003, we were registered as an extra-provincial company under the *Company Act* (British Columbia), the predecessor to the *Business Corporations Act* (British Columbia) (“BCBCA”). Zymeworks continued to the BCBCA on May 2, 2017.

The following reflects our organizational structure. We have one wholly-owned subsidiary located in Seattle, Washington named Zymeworks Biopharmaceuticals Inc. Effective as of January 1, 2017, we completed a short-form amalgamation with our other previously wholly-owned subsidiary, Zymeworks Biochemistry Inc.



Our principal and registered office is located at 1385 West 8th Avenue, Suite 540, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada V6H 3V9, and our telephone number is (604) 678-1388. Our website address is www.zymeworks.com. Information contained on, or accessible through, our website is not a part of this prospectus, and the inclusion of our website address in this prospectus is an inactive textual reference.

OUR BUSINESS

Zymeworks is an innovative, clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company dedicated to the discovery, development and commercialization of next-generation multifunctional biotherapeutics. Our suite of complementary therapeutic platforms and our fully integrated drug development engine provide the flexibility and compatibility to precisely engineer and develop highly differentiated product candidates. These capabilities have resulted in multiple wholly owned product candidates with the potential to drive superior outcomes in large underserved and unaddressed patient populations, as further described below.

Initial Public Offering

On May 3, 2017, we successfully closed our initial public offering (the “IPO”) pursuant to which we sold 4,894,467 common shares (including the sale of 394,467 common shares to the underwriters upon their partial exercise of their over-allotment option to purchase additional common shares on May 31, 2017). The public offering price of the common shares sold in the IPO was \$13.00 per share. We received net proceeds of approximately \$54.2 million, after underwriting discounts, commissions and estimated offering expenses. The common shares are listed for trading on the NYSE and the TSX under the symbol “ZYME”.

Description of Business and Products

Our lead product candidate, ZW25, is a novel bispecific antibody which targets two distinct domains of the human epidermal growth factor receptor 2, or HER2. In our adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial, ZW25 has been well tolerated with promising single agent anti-tumor activity in patients with heavily pretreated HER2-expressing cancers that have progressed after standard of care, including multiple HER2-targeted regimens. Its unique design may enable ZW25 to address patient populations with all levels of HER2 expression, including those with low to intermediate HER2-expressing tumors, who are otherwise limited to chemotherapy or hormone therapy. Our second product candidate, ZW49, capitalizes on the unique design and antibody framework of ZW25 and is a bispecific antibody-drug conjugate, or ADC, armed with our proprietary ZymeLink-cytotoxic payload. We designed ZW49 to be a best-in-class HER2-targeting ADC with a wide therapeutic window, for which we expect to file an Investigational New Drug, or IND, application in 2018. We are also advancing a deep pipeline of preclinical product candidates and discovery-stage programs in immuno-oncology and other therapeutic areas. In addition to our wholly owned pipeline, two of our therapeutic platforms have been further leveraged through multiple revenue-generating strategic partnerships with the following global pharmaceutical companies: Merck Sharp & Dohme Research Ltd., Eli Lilly and Company, Celgene Corporation and Celgene Alpine Investment Co. LLC, GlaxoSmithKline Intellectual Property Development Limited, Daiichi Sankyo Co., Ltd., and Janssen Biotech, Inc. or “Merck”, “Lilly”, “Celgene”, “GSK”, “Daiichi Sankyo” and “Janssen”, respectively.

Our proprietary capabilities and technologies include four modular, complementary therapeutic platforms that can be easily used in combination with each other and with existing approaches. This ability to layer technologies without compromising manufacturability enables us to engineer next-generation biotherapeutics with synergistic activity, which we believe will result in superior patient outcomes. Our core platforms include Azymetric, ZymeLink, EFECT and AlbuCORE. Our protein engineering expertise and proprietary structure-guided molecular modeling capabilities enable these therapeutic platforms. Together with our internal antibody discovery and generation technologies, we have established a fully-integrated drug development engine and toolkit that is capable of rapidly delivering a steady pipeline of next-generation product candidates in oncology and other therapeutic areas.

We commenced active operations in 2003 and have since devoted substantially all of our resources to research and development activities including developing our therapeutic platforms, identifying and developing potential product candidates and undertaking preclinical studies and clinical trials. Additionally, we have supported our research and development activities with general and administrative support, as well as by raising capital, conducting business planning and protecting our intellectual property. We have not generated any revenue from

[Table of Contents](#)

product sales to date and do not expect to do so until such time as we obtain regulatory approval and commercialize one or more of our product candidates. We cannot be certain of the timing or success of approval of our product candidates. We have financed our operations primarily through private equity placements, an issuance of convertible debentures, payments received under license and collaboration agreements, government grants and Scientific Research and Experimental Development, or SR&ED, tax credits and a credit facility as well as our IPO in 2017. From inception through March 31, 2018, we received approximately \$200.2 million, net of share issue costs, from private equity placements, the issuance of convertible debt, which subsequently converted into equity securities, and our IPO. Payments received from our license and collaboration agreements include upfront fees and milestone payments as well as research support and reimbursement payments through our strategic partnerships and government grants. Although it is difficult to predict our funding requirements, based upon our current operating plan, we anticipate that our existing cash and cash equivalents and short-term investments as of March 31, 2018, combined with the collaboration payments we anticipate receiving, will enable us to fund the clinical and preclinical development of our lead product candidates for at least the next twelve months.

Through March 31, 2018, we had an accumulated deficit of \$130.0 million. We reported a net loss of \$21.2 million for the three months ended March 31, 2018. We expect that over the next several years we will increase our research and development expenditures in connection with the ongoing development of our product candidates and other clinical, preclinical and regulatory activities.

Strategic Partnerships and Collaborations

Our unique combination of proprietary protein engineering capabilities and resulting therapeutic platform technologies was initially recognized by Merck and Lilly, with whom we established strategic partnerships focused on our Azymetric and EFECT therapeutic platforms. We subsequently entered into broader strategic partnerships with Celgene and GSK and a collaboration and cross-licensing agreement with Daiichi Sankyo. Following the completion of the initial agreements with Merck, Lilly and GSK, the relationships were subsequently expanded to include either additional licenses or therapeutic platforms. Most recently, we executed a licensing and collaboration agreement with Janssen to develop and commercialize next generation bispecific antibody therapeutics. These relationships provide our strategic partners with access to components of our proprietary Azymetric and EFECT therapeutic platforms for their development of a defined number of protein therapeutics, for which we will not have ownership. These strategic partnerships have provided us with non-dilutive funding as well as access to proprietary therapeutic assets, which increase our ability to rapidly advance our product candidates while maintaining worldwide commercial rights to our wholly-owned therapeutic pipeline. Our strategic partnerships include the following:

Research and License Agreement with Merck

In August 2011, we entered into a research and license agreement with Merck, which was amended and restated in December 2014, to develop and commercialize three bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the Azymetric and EFECT platforms. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Merck a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody sequence pair exclusive license to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$190.75 million, including an upfront payment (\$1.25 million received in 2011), research milestone payments totaling \$3.5 million (\$2.0 million and \$1.5 million received in 2012 and 2013, respectively), payments for completion of IND-enabling studies of up to \$6.0 million, development milestone payments of up to \$66.0 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$114.0 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks patent coverage on products, or (ii) for five years, beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage on products, royalty rates will be reduced.

Under the agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with Merck to generate bispecific antibodies with the Azymetric and EFECT platforms. Merck provides funding for a portion of our

internal and external research costs in support of the collaboration. After the conclusion of the research program, Merck will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of the products.

Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Lilly

In December 2013, we entered into a licensing and collaboration agreement with Lilly to research, develop and commercialize one bispecific antibody, with an option for a second antibody, generated through the use of the Azymetric platform. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Lilly a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody target pair-specific exclusive license to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$103.0 million, including an upfront payment (\$1.0 million received in 2013) and per product potential milestone payments, comprised of research milestone payments totaling \$1.0 million (\$1.0 million received in 2015), IND submission milestone payments of \$2.0 million, development milestone payments of \$8.0 million and commercial milestone payments of \$40 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks platform patent coverage on products, or (ii) for 10 years, beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage on products, royalty rates may be potentially reduced. In 2017, Lilly nominated a bispecific candidate from this agreement for preclinical development.

Under the agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with Lilly to generate bispecific antibodies with the Azymetric platform. Lilly provides funding for a portion of our internal and external research costs in support of the collaboration. After the conclusion of the research program, Lilly will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing, and commercialization of the products.

Second Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Lilly

In October 2014, we entered into a second licensing and collaboration agreement with Lilly to research, develop and commercialize three bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the Azymetric platform. This agreement did not alter or amend the initial agreement entered in 2013. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Lilly a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody target-pair exclusive (for two bispecific antibodies) and an antibody sequence pair-specific (for one bispecific antibody) license to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. In 2017, Lilly nominated a bispecific candidate from this agreement for preclinical development and discontinued the development of two other bispecific antibodies due to strategic portfolio realignment in those particular disease areas. We are currently eligible to receive up to \$125.0 million, comprised of research milestone payments of up to \$2.0 million (\$2.0 million earned in 2016), IND submission milestone payments of up to \$8.0 million, development milestone payments of up to \$20.0 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$95.0 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks platform patent coverage on products, or (ii) for 10 years, beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage on products, royalty rates may be potentially reduced. In conjunction with this collaboration agreement, Lilly purchased approximately \$24.0 million of our common shares.

Under the agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with Lilly to generate bispecific antibodies with the Azymetric platform. We are responsible for our internal and external research costs in support of this collaboration. After the conclusion of the research program, Lilly will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of the products.

Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Celgene

In December 2014, we entered into a collaboration agreement with Celgene to research, develop and commercialize up to eight bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the Azymetric platform. Under the

[Table of Contents](#)

terms of the agreement, we granted Celgene a right to exercise options to worldwide, royalty-bearing, antibody sequence pair-specific exclusive licenses to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. We received an upfront payment of \$8.0 million, which was accounted for as upfront collaboration consideration received in 2014. In April 2018, Celgene exercised its right to increase the number of programs under this collaboration from eight to ten and extended the research program term by 24 months until April 2020, for which are entitled to receive \$4.0 million in accordance with the terms of the collaboration agreement. As a result, Celgene has the right to exercise options on up to ten programs and if Celgene opts in on a program, we are eligible to receive up to \$164.0 million per product candidate (up to \$1.64 billion for all ten programs), comprised of a commercial license option payment of \$7.5 million, development milestone payments of up to \$101.5 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$55.0 million. No development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date.

In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks platform patent coverage on products, or (ii) for 10 years, beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. Celgene also has the right, prior to the first dosing of a patient in a Phase 3 clinical trial for a product, to buy down the royalty to a flat low-single digit rate with a payment of \$10.0 million per percentage point. In addition to this collaboration agreement, the parties also entered into an equity subscription agreement under which Celgene paid \$8.6 million for common shares.

Under the agreement, we are collaborating with Celgene to generate and develop a number of bispecific antibodies during the research program term. After the conclusion of the research program in April 2020, Celgene will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of the products.

Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with GSK

In December 2015, we entered into a collaboration and license agreement with GSK to research, develop and commercialize up to 10 new Fc-engineered monoclonal and bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the EFECT and Azymetric platforms. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted GSK a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody target-exclusive license to new intellectual property generated to the EFECT platform under this collaboration and a non-exclusive license to the Azymetric platform to research, develop and commercialize future licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$1.1 billion, including research, development and commercial milestone payments of up to \$110.0 million for each product. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low-single digits on net sales of products, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks patent coverage on products or certain joint patent coverage on products, or (ii) for 10 years beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage or certain joint patent coverage on products, royalty rates will be reduced. No development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date. We retained the right to develop up to four products, free of royalties, using the new intellectual property generated in this collaboration, and after a period of time, to grant licenses to such intellectual property for development of additional products by third parties.

Under the collaboration and license agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with GSK to generate new Fc-engineered antibodies. Each party will bear its own costs for the responsibilities assigned to it during the research period. After the conclusion of the research period, each party will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of its own respective products. The research period will terminate when the "research collaboration plan" (as defined in the collaboration and license agreement) is complete or on December 1, 2018, whichever is earlier. During the term of the agreement and solely based on the outcome of the research collaboration, we have granted GSK exclusive rights to develop and commercialize monospecific antibodies against targets nominated by GSK. If GSK develops bispecific antibodies using its own platform approaches, we have granted GSK exclusive rights to develop and commercialize such antibodies comprising of specific antibody sequence pairs.

Second Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with GSK

In April 2016, we entered into a licensing agreement with GSK to research, develop and commercialize up to six bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the Azymetric platform. This may include bispecific antibodies incorporating new engineered Fc regions generated under the 2015 GSK agreement outlined in the preceding section. Under the terms of this agreement, we granted GSK a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody sequence pair-specific exclusive license to research, develop and commercialize licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$908.0 million, including an upfront payment as a technology access fee (\$6.0 million received in 2016), research milestone payments of up to \$30.0 million, development milestone payments of up to \$152.0 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$720.0 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks patent coverage on products, or (ii) for 10 years beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage on products, royalty rates may be potentially reduced. No research, development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date. GSK has the right, prior to the first dosing of a patient in a Phase 3 clinical trial for a product, to buy down the royalty payable on such product by only 1% with a payment of \$10.0 million.

Under the agreement, GSK will bear all responsibility and all costs associated with research, development and commercialization of products generated using the Azymetric platform.

Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Daiichi Sankyo

In September 2016, we entered into a collaboration and cross-license agreement with Daiichi Sankyo to research, develop and commercialize one bispecific antibody generated through the use of the Azymetric and EFECT platforms. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Daiichi Sankyo a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody sequence pair-specific exclusive license to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$149.9 million, including an upfront payment as a technology access fee of \$2.0 million (received in 2016), research (\$1.0 million received in 2017) and development milestone payments and a commercial option payment totaling up to \$67.9 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$80.0 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties ranging from the low single digits up to 10% on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks platform patent coverage on products, or (ii) for 10 years beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. No research, development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date. We also gained non-exclusive rights to develop and commercialize up to three products using Daiichi Sankyo's proprietary immune-oncology antibodies, with royalties in the low single digits to be paid to Daiichi Sankyo on sales of such products.

Under the agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with Daiichi Sankyo to generate bispecific antibodies with the Azymetric platform. Daiichi Sankyo is responsible for our internal and external research costs in support of this collaboration during the research program term. After the research program term, Daiichi Sankyo will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of the products. Under the non-exclusive immuno-oncology antibody license to Zymeworks, we are solely responsible for all research, development and commercialization of the resulting products.

Second Licensing Agreement with Daiichi Sankyo

In May 2018, we entered into a new license agreement with Daiichi Sankyo to research, develop and commercialize two bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the Azymetric and EFECT platforms.

Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Daiichi Sankyo a worldwide, royalty-bearing, antibody sequence pair-specific, exclusive license to research, develop and commercialize certain products. We are eligible to receive up to \$484.7 million including an upfront payment as a technology access fee (\$18.0 million earned on

[Table of Contents](#)

execution of the agreement), development milestone payments totaling up to \$126.7 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$340.0 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties ranging from the low single digits up to 10% on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks platform patent coverage on products, or (ii) for 10 years beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage on products, royalty rates may be reduced. No development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date. Under the agreement, Daiichi Sankyo will be solely responsible for the research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of the products.

Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Janssen

In November 2017, we entered into a collaboration agreement with Janssen to research, develop and commercialize up to six bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the Azymetric and EFECT platforms. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Janssen a worldwide, royalty-bearing, antibody sequence pair-specific exclusive license to research, develop and commercialize certain products. We are eligible to receive up to \$1.45 billion, including an upfront payment of \$50.0 million (received in 2017), development milestone payments of up to \$282.0 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$1.12 billion. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks platform patent coverage on products, or (ii) for 10 years, beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage on products, royalty rates may be potentially reduced. No development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date. Janssen has the right, prior to the first dosing of a patient in a Phase 3 clinical trial for a product, to buy down the royalty relating to such product by only 1% with a payment of \$10.0 million. Janssen also has the option to develop two additional bispecific antibodies under this agreement subject to a future option payment.

Under the agreement, Janssen will be solely responsible for the research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of the products.

Our Strategy

Our goal is to leverage our next-generation therapeutic platforms and proprietary protein engineering capabilities to become a domain dominator in the discovery, development and commercialization of best-in-class multifunctional biotherapeutics for the treatment of cancer and other diseases with high unmet medical need.

Our key strategies to achieve this goal are to:

- aggressively advance our lead product candidate, ZW25, through the clinic in multiple HER2-expressing tumor types;
- pursue a rapid and multi-faceted development strategy for our novel and highly differentiated pipeline into clinical trials across many oncology indications with a critically high unmet medical need;
- leverage our therapeutic platforms and proprietary protein engineering capabilities to continue to discover and develop additional novel product candidates;
- leverage our strategic partnerships, while pursuing additional collaborations that can augment the power of our platforms and value of our pipeline; and
- continue to develop innovative therapeutic platforms and expand our therapeutic focus into logical areas such as autoimmunity and inflammatory diseases.

RISK FACTORS

Investing in our securities is speculative and involves a high degree of risk. You should consider carefully the following risk factors, as well as the other information in this prospectus, including our consolidated financial statements and notes thereto, before you decide to purchase our securities. You should also refer to the other information set forth or incorporated by reference in this prospectus or any applicable prospectus supplement. If any of the following risks actually occur, our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects could be materially adversely affected, the value of our securities could decline and you may lose all or part of your investment. This prospectus also contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in the forward-looking statements as a result of a number of factors, including the risks described below. See “Cautionary Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements.”

Risks Related to Our Business and the Development and Commercialization of Our Product Candidates

We have a limited number of product candidates, all which are still in preclinical or early clinical development. If we do not obtain regulatory approval of one or more of our product candidates, or experience significant delays in doing so, our business will be materially adversely affected.

We currently have no products approved for sale or marketing in any country, and may never be able to obtain regulatory approval for any of our product candidates. As a result, we are not currently permitted to market any of our product candidates in the United States or in any other country until we obtain regulatory approval from the FDA or regulatory authorities outside the United States. Our product candidates are in early stages of development and we have not submitted an application, or received marketing approval, for any of our product candidates. Furthermore, the fact that our core competencies have been recognized through strategic partnerships does not improve our product candidates' outlook for regulatory approval. We have limited experience in conducting and managing the clinical trials necessary to obtain regulatory approvals, including approval by the FDA. Obtaining regulatory approval of our product candidates will depend on many factors, including, but not limited to, the following:

- successfully completing formulation and process development activities;
- completing clinical trials that demonstrate the efficacy and safety of our product candidates;
- receiving marketing approval from applicable regulatory authorities;
- establishing commercial manufacturing capabilities; and
- launching commercial sales, marketing and distribution operations.

Many of these factors are wholly or partially beyond our control, including clinical advancement, the regulatory submission process and changes in the competitive landscape. If we do not achieve one or more of these factors in a timely manner, we could experience significant delays or an inability to develop our product candidates at all.

Clinical trials are very expensive, time consuming and difficult to design and implement and involve uncertain outcomes. Furthermore, the results of previous preclinical studies and clinical trials may not be predictive of future results, and the results of our current and planned clinical trials may not satisfy the requirements of the FDA or non-U.S. regulatory authorities.

Positive or timely results from preclinical or early-stage trials do not ensure positive or timely results in late-stage clinical trials or product approval by the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities. We will be required to demonstrate with substantial evidence through well-controlled clinical trials that our product candidates are safe and effective for use in a diverse population before we can seek regulatory approvals for their commercial sale. Our planned clinical trials may produce negative or inconclusive results, and we or any of our

[Table of Contents](#)

current and future strategic partners may decide, or regulators may require us, to conduct additional clinical or preclinical testing. Success in preclinical studies or early-stage clinical trials does not mean that future clinical trials or registration clinical trials will be successful because product candidates in later-stage clinical trials may fail to demonstrate sufficient safety and efficacy to the satisfaction of the FDA and non-U.S. regulatory authorities, despite having progressed through preclinical studies and initial clinical trials. Product candidates that have shown promising results in early clinical trials may still suffer significant setbacks in subsequent clinical trials or registration clinical trials. For example, a number of companies in the pharmaceutical industry, including those with greater resources and experience than us, have suffered significant setbacks in advanced clinical trials, even after obtaining promising results in earlier clinical trials. Similarly, preclinical interim results of a clinical trial do not necessarily predict final results.

If clinical trials for our product candidates are prolonged, delayed or stopped, we may be unable to obtain regulatory approval and commercialize our product candidates on a timely basis, or at all, which would require us to incur additional costs and delay our receipt of any product revenue.

We are currently enrolling an adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial of ZW25 in patients with recurrent or metastatic HER2-expressing solid tumors, and expect to file an IND application for ZW49 in 2018. We may experience delays in our ongoing or future preclinical studies or clinical trials, and we do not know whether future preclinical studies or clinical trials will begin on time, need to be redesigned, enroll an adequate number of patients on time or be completed on schedule, if at all. The commencement or completion of these planned clinical trials could be substantially delayed or prevented by many factors, including:

- further discussions with the FDA or other regulatory agencies regarding the scope or design of our clinical trials;
- the limited number of, and competition for, suitable sites to conduct our clinical trials, many of which may already be engaged in other clinical trial programs, including some that may be for the same indication as our product candidates;
- any delay or failure to obtain approval or agreement to commence a clinical trial in any of the countries where enrollment is planned;
- inability to obtain sufficient funds required for a clinical trial;
- clinical holds on, or other regulatory objections to, a new or ongoing clinical trial;
- delay or failure to manufacture sufficient supplies of the product candidate for our clinical trials;
- delay or failure to reach agreement on acceptable clinical trial agreement terms or clinical trial protocols with prospective sites or clinical research organizations (“CROs”) the terms of which can be subject to extensive negotiation and may vary significantly among different sites or CROs; and
- delay or failure to obtain institutional review board (“IRB”) approval to conduct a clinical trial at a prospective site;
- slower than expected rates of patient recruitment and enrollment;
- failure of patients to complete the clinical trial;
- the inability to enroll a sufficient number of patients in studies to ensure adequate statistical power to detect statistically significant treatment effects;
- unforeseen safety issues, including severe or unexpected drug-related adverse effects experienced by patients, including possible deaths;
- lack of efficacy during clinical trials;
- termination of our clinical trials by one or more clinical trial sites;
- inability or unwillingness of patients or clinical investigators to follow our clinical trial protocols;

[Table of Contents](#)

- inability to monitor patients adequately during or after treatment by us or our CROs;
- our CROs or clinical study sites failing to comply with regulatory requirements or meet their contractual obligations to us in a timely manner, or at all, deviating from the protocol or dropping out of a study;
- the inability to produce or obtain sufficient quantities of a product candidate to complete clinical studies;
- the inability to address any noncompliance with regulatory requirements or safety concerns that arise during the course of a clinical trial;
- the need to repeat or terminate clinical trials as a result of inconclusive or negative results or unforeseen complications in testing; and
- our clinical trials may be suspended or terminated upon a breach or pursuant to the terms of any agreement with, or for any other reason by, current or future strategic partners that have responsibility for the clinical development of any of our product candidates.

Changes in regulatory requirements, policies and guidelines may also occur and we may need to significantly amend clinical trial protocols to reflect these changes with appropriate regulatory authorities. These changes may require us to renegotiate terms with CROs or resubmit clinical trial protocols to IRBs for re-examination, which may impact the costs, timing or successful completion of a clinical trial. Our clinical trials may be suspended or terminated at any time by the FDA, other regulatory authorities, the IRB overseeing the clinical trial at issue, any of our clinical trial sites with respect to that site, or us.

Any failure or significant delay in commencing or completing clinical trials for our product candidates would adversely affect our ability to obtain regulatory approval and our commercial prospects and ability to generate product revenue will be diminished.

If we are unable to enroll patients in clinical trials, we will be unable to complete these trials on a timely basis.

Patient enrollment, a significant factor in the timing of clinical trials, is affected by many factors including the size and nature of the patient population, the proximity of subjects to clinical sites, the eligibility criteria for the trial, the design of the clinical trial, ability to obtain and maintain patient consents, risk that enrolled subjects will drop out before completion, competing clinical trials and clinicians' and patients' perceptions as to the potential advantages of the drug being studied in relation to other available therapies, including any new drugs that may be approved for the indications we are investigating. In particular, we are developing certain of our products for the treatment of rare diseases, which have limited pools of patients from which to draw for clinical testing. If we are unable to enroll a sufficient number of patients to complete clinical testing, we will be unable to gain marketing approval for such product candidates and our business will be harmed.

The design or our execution of clinical trials may not support regulatory approval.

The design or execution of a clinical trial can determine whether its results will support regulatory approval and flaws in the design or execution of a clinical trial may not become apparent until the clinical trial is well advanced. In some instances, there can be significant variability in safety or efficacy results between different trials of the same product candidate due to numerous factors, including changes in trial protocols, differences in size and type of the patient populations, adherence to the dosing regimen and other trial protocols and the rate of dropout among clinical trial participants. We do not know whether any Phase 2, Phase 3 or other clinical trials we or any of our strategic partners may conduct will demonstrate consistent or adequate efficacy and safety to obtain regulatory approval to market our product candidates.

Further, the FDA and comparable foreign regulatory authorities have substantial discretion in the approval process and in determining when or whether regulatory approval will be obtained for any of our product

candidates. Our product candidates may not be approved even if they achieve their primary endpoints in future Phase 3 clinical trials or registration trials. The FDA or other non-U.S. regulatory authorities may disagree with our trial design and our interpretation of data from preclinical studies and clinical trials. In addition, any of these regulatory authorities may change requirements for the approval of a product candidate even after reviewing and providing comments or advice on a protocol for a pivotal Phase 3 clinical trial that has the potential to result in FDA or other agencies' approval. In addition, any of these regulatory authorities may also approve a product candidate for fewer or more limited indications than we request or may grant approval contingent on the performance of costly post-marketing clinical trials. The FDA or other non-U.S. regulatory authorities may not approve the labeling claims that we believe would be necessary or desirable for the successful commercialization of our product candidates.

Successful development of our current and future product candidates is uncertain and we may discontinue or reprioritize the development of any of our product candidates at any time, at our discretion.

Before obtaining regulatory approval for the commercial distribution of our product candidates, we must conduct, at our own expense, extensive preclinical tests and clinical trials to demonstrate the safety and efficacy of our product candidates in humans. Preclinical and clinical testing is expensive, difficult to design and implement, can take many years to complete and is uncertain as to outcome. Additionally, the results from nonclinical testing or early clinical trials of a product candidate may not predict the results that will be obtained in subsequent subjects or in subsequent human clinical trials of that product candidate or any other product candidate. There is a high failure rate for drugs proceeding through clinical studies. A number of companies in the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries have suffered significant setbacks in clinical development even after achieving promising results in earlier studies, and any such setbacks in any future clinical development could have a material adverse effect on our business and operating results. Alternatively, management may elect to discontinue development of certain product candidates to accommodate a shift in corporate strategy, despite positive clinical results. Based on our operating results and business strategy, among other factors, we may discontinue the development of any of our product candidates under development or reprioritize our focus on other product candidates at any time and at our discretion. For example, in February 2018, we elected to discontinue the development of one of our product candidates, ZW33, in favor of pursuing a new product candidate, ZW49.

Our product candidates may have undesirable side effects that may delay or prevent marketing approval or, if approval is received, require them to be taken off the market, require them to include safety warnings or otherwise limit their sales; no regulatory agency has made any such determination that any of our product candidates are safe or effective for use by the general public for any indication.

All of our product candidates are still in preclinical or early clinical development. Additionally, all of our product candidates are required to undergo ongoing safety testing in humans as part of clinical trials. Consequently, not all adverse effects of drugs can be predicted or anticipated. Unforeseen side effects from any of our product candidates could arise either during clinical development or, if approved by regulatory authorities, after the approved product has been marketed. While we believe our lead product candidates have demonstrated a favorable safety profile in animals, ZW25 has recently commenced dosing in an adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial and ZW49 has never been tested in humans. Therefore, the results from clinical trials may not demonstrate a favorable safety profile in humans. The results of future clinical trials may show that ZW25 or our other product candidates cause undesirable or unacceptable side effects, which could interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials, and result in delay of, or failure to obtain, marketing approval from the FDA and other regulatory authorities, or result in marketing approval from the FDA and other regulatory authorities with restrictive label warnings, limited patient populations or potential product liability claims. Even if we believe that our Phase 1 clinical trial and preclinical studies demonstrate the safety and efficacy of our product candidates, only the FDA and other comparable regulatory agencies may ultimately make such determination. No regulatory agency has made any such determination that any of our product candidates are safe or effective for use by the general public for any indication.

Table of Contents

If any of our product candidates receive marketing approval and we or others later identify undesirable or unacceptable side effects caused by such products:

- regulatory authorities may require us to take our approved product off the market;
- regulatory authorities may require the addition of labeling statements, specific warnings, a contraindication or field alerts to physicians and pharmacies;
- we may be required to change the way the product is administered, conduct additional clinical trials or change the labeling of the product;
- we may be subject to limitations on how we may promote the product;
- sales of the product may decrease significantly;
- we may be subject to litigation or product liability claims; and
- our reputation may suffer.

Any of these events could prevent us or our current or future strategic partners from achieving or maintaining market acceptance of the affected product or could substantially increase commercialization costs and expenses, which in turn could delay or prevent us from generating revenue from the sale of any future products.

We face significant competition and if our competitors develop and market products that are more effective, safer or less expensive than our product candidates, our commercial opportunities will be negatively impacted.

The life sciences industry is highly competitive and subject to rapid and significant technological change. We are currently developing biotherapeutics that will compete with other drugs and therapies that currently exist or are being developed. Products we may develop in the future are also likely to face competition from other drugs and therapies, some of which we may not currently be aware. We have competitors both in the United States and internationally, including major multinational pharmaceutical companies, established biotechnology companies, specialty pharmaceutical companies, universities and other research institutions. Many of our competitors have significantly greater financial, manufacturing, marketing, drug development, technical and human resources than we do. Large pharmaceutical companies, in particular, have extensive experience in clinical testing, obtaining regulatory approvals, recruiting patients and in manufacturing pharmaceutical products. These companies also have significantly greater research and marketing capabilities than we do and may also have products that have been approved or are in late stages of development and collaborative arrangements in our target markets with leading companies and research institutions. Established pharmaceutical companies may also invest heavily to accelerate discovery and development of novel compounds or to in-license novel compounds that could make the product candidates that we develop obsolete. As a result of all of these factors, our competitors may succeed in obtaining patent protection or FDA approval or discovering, developing and commercializing products in our field before we do.

Specifically, there are a large number of companies developing or marketing treatments for cancer and autoimmune disorders, including many major pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies. These treatments consist both of small molecule drug products, as well as biologics that work by using next-generation antibody therapeutic platforms to address specific cancer targets. In addition, several companies are also developing bispecific antibodies. Other companies are developing new treatments for cancer that enhance the Fc regions of antibodies to create more potent antibodies, including MacroGenics, Inc., XenCor, Inc. and F. Hoffmann-La Roche AG.

Our commercial opportunity could be reduced or eliminated if our competitors develop and commercialize products that are safer, more effective, have fewer or less severe effects, are more convenient or are less expensive than any products that we may develop. Our competitors also may obtain FDA or other regulatory approval for their products more rapidly than we may obtain approval for our product candidates, which could result in our competitors establishing a strong market position before we are able to enter the market.

[Table of Contents](#)

Smaller and other early-stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large and established companies. These third parties compete with us in recruiting and retaining qualified scientific and management personnel, establishing clinical trial sites and patient registration for clinical trials, as well as in acquiring technologies complementary to, or necessary for, our programs. In addition, the biopharmaceutical industry is characterized by rapid technological change. If we fail to stay at the forefront of technological change, we may be unable to compete effectively. Technological advances or products developed by our competitors may render our technologies or product candidates obsolete, less competitive or not economical.

Our product candidates, for which we intend to seek approval, may face competition sooner than anticipated.

Our ability to compete may be affected in many cases by insurers or other third-party payors seeking to encourage the use of biosimilar products. Biosimilar products are expected to become available over the coming years. Even if our product candidates achieve marketing approval, they may be priced at a significant premium over competitive biosimilar products, if any have been approved by then. The Biologics Price Competition and Innovation Act of 2009, which is included in the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (“PPACA”) authorized the FDA to approve similar versions of innovative biologics, commonly known as biosimilars. Under the PPACA, a manufacturer may submit an application for licensure of a biologic product that is “biosimilar to” or “interchangeable with” a previously approved biological product or “reference product.” Manufacturers may not submit an application for a biosimilar to the FDA until four years following approval of the reference product, and the FDA may not approve a biosimilar product until 12 years from the date on which the reference product was approved. Even if a product is considered to be a reference product eligible for exclusivity, another company could market a competing version of that product if the FDA approves a full Biologics License Application (“BLA”) for such product containing the sponsor’s own preclinical data and data from adequate and well-controlled clinical trials to demonstrate the safety, purity and potency of their product. From time to time, there are proposals to repeal or modify the PPACA and it is uncertain how any such proposals, if approved, would affect these provisions.

If any of our product candidates receive regulatory approval, the approved products may not achieve broad market acceptance among physicians, patients, the medical community and third-party payors, in which case revenue generated from their sales would be limited.

The commercial success of our product candidates will depend upon their acceptance among physicians, patients and the medical community. The degree of market acceptance of our product candidates will depend on a number of factors, including:

- limitations or warnings contained in the approved labeling for a product candidate;
- changes in the standard of care for the targeted indications for any of our product candidates;
- limitations in the approved clinical indications for our product candidates;
- demonstrated clinical safety and efficacy compared to other products;
- lack of significant adverse side effects;
- sales, marketing and distribution support;
- availability of coverage and extent of reimbursement from managed care plans and other third-party payors;
- timing of market introduction and perceived effectiveness of competitive products;
- the degree of cost-effectiveness of our product candidates;
- availability of alternative therapies at similar or lower cost, including generic and over-the-counter products;

[Table of Contents](#)

- the extent to which the product candidate is approved for inclusion on formularies of hospitals and managed care organizations;
- whether the product is designated under physician treatment guidelines as a first-line therapy or as a second or third-line therapy for particular diseases;
- whether the product can be used effectively with other therapies to achieve higher response rates;
- adverse publicity about our product candidates or favorable publicity about competitive products;
- convenience and ease of administration of our products; and
- potential product liability claims.

If any of our product candidates are approved, but do not achieve an adequate level of acceptance by physicians, patients and the medical community, we may not generate sufficient revenue from these products, and we may not become or remain profitable. In addition, efforts to educate the medical community and third-party payors on the benefits of our product candidates may require significant resources and may never be successful.

We may be unable to obtain orphan drug exclusivity in specific indications for ZW25 or in future product candidates that we may develop. If our competitors are able to obtain orphan product exclusivity for their products in specific indications, we may not be able to have competing products approved in those indications by the applicable regulatory authority for a significant period of time.

Regulatory authorities in some jurisdictions, including the United States and Europe, may designate drugs for relatively small patient populations as orphan drugs. Under the Orphan Drug Act, the FDA may designate a product candidate as an orphan drug if it is a drug intended to treat a rare disease or condition, which is generally defined as a patient population of fewer than 200,000 individuals annually in the United States. The FDA has granted Orphan Drug Designation to ZW25 for the treatment of gastric and ovarian cancer and we may seek Orphan Drug Designation for additional indications in the future. Orphan Drug Designation neither shortens the development time or regulatory review time of a drug nor gives the drug any advantage in the regulatory review or approval process.

Generally, if a product candidate with an Orphan Drug Designation subsequently receives the first marketing approval for the indication for which it has such designation, the product is entitled to a period of marketing exclusivity, which precludes the European Medicines Agency (“EMA”) or the FDA from approving another marketing application for the same drug for the same indication for that time period. The applicable period is seven years in the United States and 10 years in Europe. The European exclusivity period can be reduced to six years if a product no longer meets the criteria for Orphan Drug Designation or if the product is sufficiently profitable so that market exclusivity is no longer justified. Orphan drug exclusivity may be lost if the FDA or EMA determines that the request for designation was materially defective or if the manufacturer is unable to assure sufficient quantity of the product to meet the needs of patients with the rare disease or condition.

Even if we obtain orphan drug exclusivity for ZW25, or for any other product candidates that receive an Orphan Drug Designation in the future, that exclusivity may not effectively protect the product from competition because different drugs with different active moieties can be approved for the same condition. Further, in the United States, even after an orphan drug is approved, the FDA can subsequently approve the same drug for the same condition submitted by a competitor if the FDA concludes that the later drug is clinically superior in that it is shown to be safer, more effective or makes a major contribution to patient care. If we fail to maintain our current Orphan Drug Designations for our product candidate, ZW25, or for any other product candidates that receive an Orphan Drug Designation in the future, or if the FDA approves Orphan Drug Designation for similar product candidates of other pharmaceutical companies, our competitive position would be harmed.

Even if we obtain FDA approval of any of our product candidates, we may never obtain approval or commercialize such products outside of the United States, which would limit our ability to realize their full market potential.

In order to market any products outside of the United States, we must establish and comply with numerous and varying regulatory requirements of other countries regarding safety and efficacy. Clinical trials conducted in one country may not be accepted by regulatory authorities in other countries, and regulatory approval in one country does not mean that regulatory approval will be obtained in any other country. Approval procedures vary among countries and can involve additional product testing and validation and additional administrative review periods. Seeking foreign regulatory approvals could result in significant delays, difficulties and costs for us and may require additional preclinical studies or clinical trials which would be costly and time consuming. Regulatory requirements can vary widely from country to country and could delay or prevent the introduction of our products in those countries. Satisfying these and other regulatory requirements is costly, time consuming, uncertain and subject to unanticipated delays. In addition, our failure to obtain regulatory approval in any country may delay or have negative effects on the process for regulatory approval in other countries. We do not have any product candidates approved for sale in any jurisdiction, including international markets, and we do not have experience in obtaining regulatory approval in international markets. If we fail to comply with regulatory requirements in international markets or to obtain and maintain required approvals, our target market will be reduced and our ability to realize the full market potential of our products will be harmed.

Reimbursement decisions by third-party payors may have an adverse effect on pricing and market acceptance. If there is not sufficient reimbursement for our products, it is less likely that our products will be widely used.

Even if our product candidates are approved for sale by the appropriate regulatory authorities, market acceptance and sales of these products will depend on reimbursement policies and may be affected by future healthcare reform measures. Government authorities and third-party payors, such as private health insurers and health maintenance organizations, decide which drugs they will reimburse and establish payment levels. We cannot be certain that reimbursement will be available for any products that we develop. If reimbursement is not available or is available on a limited basis, we may not be able to successfully commercialize any of our approved products.

In the United States, the Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement, and Modernization Act of 2003, also called the Medicare Modernization Act (the "MMA") changed the way Medicare covers and pays for pharmaceutical products. The legislation established Medicare Part D, which expanded Medicare coverage for outpatient prescription drug purchases by the elderly but provided authority for limiting the number of drugs that will be covered in any therapeutic class. The MMA also introduced a new reimbursement methodology based on average sales prices for physician-administered drugs. We expect to experience pricing pressures in connection with the sale of any products that we develop, due to the trend toward managed healthcare, the increasing influence of health maintenance organizations and additional legislative proposals.

There may be significant delays in obtaining coverage and reimbursement for newly approved drugs, and coverage may be more limited than the purposes for which the drug is approved by the FDA, EMA or other regulatory authorities. Moreover, eligibility for coverage and reimbursement does not imply that a drug will be paid for in all cases or at a rate that covers our costs, including research, development, manufacture, sale and distribution expenses. Interim reimbursement levels for new drugs, if applicable, may also be insufficient to cover our and any collaborator's costs and may not be made permanent. Reimbursement rates may vary according to the use of the drug and the clinical setting in which it is used, may be based on reimbursement levels already set for lower cost drugs and may be incorporated into existing payments for other services. Net prices for drugs may be reduced by mandatory discounts or rebates required by government healthcare programs or private payors and by any future relaxation of laws that presently restrict imports of drugs from countries where they may be sold at lower prices than in the United States. Our or any collaborator's inability to promptly obtain coverage and profitable payment rates from both government-funded and private payors for any approved

[Table of Contents](#)

products that we or our strategic partners develop could have a material adverse effect on our operating results, our ability to raise capital needed to commercialize product candidates and our overall financial condition.

If the market opportunities for any product that we or our strategic partners develop are smaller than we believe they are, our revenue may be adversely affected and our business may suffer.

We intend to initially focus our independent product candidate development on treatments for oncology. Our projections of addressable patient populations that have the potential to benefit from treatment with our product candidates are based on estimates. If any of the foregoing estimates are inaccurate, the market opportunities for any of our product candidates could be significantly diminished and have an adverse material impact on our business.

We may expend our limited resources to pursue a particular product candidate or indication and fail to capitalize on product candidates or indications that may be more profitable or for which there is a greater likelihood of success.

Because we have limited financial and managerial resources, we focus on research programs, therapeutic platforms and product candidates that we identify for specific indications. As a result, we may forego or delay pursuit of opportunities with other therapeutic platforms or product candidates or for other indications that later prove to have greater commercial potential. Our resource allocation decisions may cause us to fail to capitalize on viable commercial products or profitable market opportunities. Our spending on current and future research and development programs, therapeutic platforms and product candidates for specific indications may not yield any commercially viable products. If we do not accurately evaluate the commercial potential or target market for a particular product candidate, we may relinquish valuable rights to that product candidate through collaboration, licensing or other royalty arrangements in cases in which it would have been more advantageous for us to retain sole development and commercialization rights.

We may not be successful in our efforts to use and expand our therapeutic platforms to build a pipeline of product candidates.

A key element of our strategy is to use and expand our therapeutic platforms to build a pipeline of product candidates and progress these product candidates through clinical development for the treatment of a variety of diseases. Although our research and development efforts to date have resulted in a pipeline of product candidates directed at various cancers, we may not be able to develop product candidates that are safe and effective. In addition, although we expect that our therapeutic platforms will allow us to develop a steady stream of product candidates, they may not prove to be successful at doing so. Even if we are successful in continuing to build our pipeline, the potential product candidates that we identify may not be suitable for clinical development, including as a result of being shown to have harmful side effects or other characteristics that indicate that they are unlikely to be products that will receive marketing approval and achieve market acceptance. If we do not continue to successfully develop and begin to commercialize product candidates, we will face difficulty in obtaining product revenue in future periods, which could result in significant harm to our financial position and adversely affect our share price.

Even if we receive regulatory approval to commercialize any of the product candidates that we develop, we will be subject to ongoing regulatory obligations and continued regulatory review, which may result in significant additional expense.

Any regulatory approvals that we receive for our product candidates may be subject to limitations on the approved indicated uses for which the product may be marketed or subject to certain conditions of approval, and may contain requirements for potentially costly post-approval trials, including Phase 4 clinical trials, and surveillance to monitor the safety and efficacy of the marketed product.

[Table of Contents](#)

For any approved product, we will be subject to ongoing regulatory obligations and extensive oversight by regulatory authorities, including with respect to manufacturing processes, labeling, packaging, distribution, adverse event reporting, storage, advertising, promotion and recordkeeping for the product. These requirements include submissions of safety and other post-approval information and reports, as well as continued compliance with current good manufacturing practices (“cGMP”), and current good clinical practices (“cGCP”), for any clinical trials that we or our strategic partners conduct after approval. Later discovery of previously unknown problems with a product, including adverse events of unanticipated severity or frequency, or with third-party manufacturers or manufacturing processes, or failure to comply with regulatory requirements, may result in, among other things:

- restrictions on the marketing or manufacturing of the product;
- withdrawal of the product from the market or voluntary or mandatory product recalls;
- fines, warning letters or holds on clinical trials;
- refusal by the FDA, EMA or another applicable regulatory authority to approve pending applications or supplements to approved applications filed by us or our strategic partners, or suspension or revocation of product license approvals;
- product seizure or detention, or refusal to permit the import or export of products; and
- injunctions or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties.

Occurrence of any of the foregoing could have a material and adverse effect on our business and results of operations. Further, the FDA’s or other ex-U.S. regulators’ policies may change and additional government regulations may be enacted that could prevent, limit or delay regulatory approval of our product candidates. If we are slow or unable to adapt to changes in existing requirements or the adoption of new requirements or policies, or if we are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, we may lose any marketing approval that we may have obtained, which would adversely affect our business, prospects and ability to achieve or sustain profitability.

If any product liability lawsuits are successfully brought against us or any of our strategic partners, we may incur substantial liabilities and may be required to limit commercialization of our product candidates.

We face an inherent risk of product liability lawsuits related to the testing of our product candidates in seriously ill patients, and will face an even greater risk if product candidates are approved by regulatory authorities and introduced commercially. Product liability claims may be brought against us or our strategic partners by participants enrolled in our clinical trials, patients, health care providers or others using, administering or selling any of our future approved products. If we cannot successfully defend ourselves against any such claims, we may incur substantial liabilities. Regardless of their merit or eventual outcome, liability claims may result in:

- decreased demand for any future approved products;
- injury to our reputation;
- withdrawal of clinical trial participants;
- termination of clinical trial sites or entire trial programs;
- increased regulatory scrutiny;
- significant litigation costs;
- substantial monetary awards to or costly settlement with patients or other claimants;
- product recalls or a change in the indications for which they may be used;
- loss of revenue;
- diversion of management and scientific resources from our business operations; and
- the inability to commercialize our product candidates.

[Table of Contents](#)

If any of our product candidates are approved for commercial sale, we will be highly dependent upon consumer perceptions of us and the safety and quality of our products. We could be adversely affected if we are subject to negative publicity. We could also be adversely affected if any of our products or any similar products distributed by other companies prove to be, or are asserted to be, harmful to patients. Because of our dependence upon consumer perceptions, any adverse publicity associated with illness or other adverse effects resulting from patients' use or misuse of our products or any similar products distributed by other companies could have a material adverse impact on our financial condition or results of operations.

We may need to have in place increased product liability coverage when we begin the commercialization of our product candidates. Insurance coverage is becoming increasingly expensive. As a result, we may be unable to maintain or obtain sufficient insurance at a reasonable cost to protect us against losses that could have a material adverse effect on our business. A successful product liability claim or series of claims brought against us, particularly if judgments exceed any insurance coverage we may have, could decrease our cash resources and adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operation.

Changes in methods of product candidate manufacturing or formulation may result in additional costs or delay.

As product candidates are developed through preclinical to late-stage clinical trials towards approval and commercialization, it is common that various aspects of the development program, such as manufacturing methods and formulation, are altered along the way in an effort to optimize processes and results. Such changes carry the risk that they will not achieve these intended objectives. Any of these changes could cause our product candidates to perform differently and affect the results of planned clinical trials or other future clinical trials conducted with the altered materials. This could delay completion of clinical trials, require the conduct of bridging clinical trials or the repetition of one or more clinical trials, increase clinical trial costs, delay approval of our product candidates and jeopardize our ability, or our strategic partners' ability, to commence product sales and generate revenue.

Acquisitions or joint ventures could disrupt our business, cause dilution to our shareholders and otherwise harm our business.

We actively evaluate various strategic transactions on an ongoing basis. We may acquire other businesses, products or technologies as well as pursue strategic alliances, joint ventures or investments in complementary businesses. Any of these transactions could be material to our financial condition and operating results and expose us to many risks, including:

- disruption in our relationships with existing strategic partners or suppliers as a result of such a transaction;
- unanticipated liabilities related to acquired companies;
- difficulties integrating acquired personnel, technologies and operations into our existing business;
- retention of key employees;
- diversion of management time and focus from operating our business to management of strategic alliances or joint ventures or acquisition integration challenges;
- increases in our expenses and reductions in our cash available for operations and other uses; and
- possible write-offs or impairment charges relating to acquired businesses.

Foreign acquisitions involve unique risks in addition to those mentioned above, including those related to integration of operations across different cultures and languages, currency risks and the particular economic, political and regulatory risks associated with specific countries.

Also, the anticipated benefit of any strategic alliance, joint venture or acquisition may not materialize or such strategic alliance, joint venture or acquisition may be prohibited. Additionally, future acquisitions or dispositions could result in potentially dilutive issuances of our equity securities, the incurrence of debt, contingent liabilities or amortization expenses or write-offs of goodwill, any of which could harm our financial condition. We cannot predict the number, timing or size of future joint ventures or acquisitions, or the effect that any such transactions might have on our operating results.

Foreign governments tend to impose strict price controls, which may adversely affect our future profitability.

In most foreign countries, particularly in those in the European Union, prescription drug pricing and reimbursement is subject to governmental control. In those countries that impose price controls, pricing negotiations with governmental authorities can take considerable time after the receipt of marketing approval for a product. To obtain reimbursement or pricing approval in some countries, we or our strategic partners may be required to conduct a clinical trial that compares the cost-effectiveness of our product candidates to other available therapies.

Some countries require approval of the sale price of a drug before it can be marketed. In many countries, the pricing review period begins after marketing or product licensing approval is granted. In some foreign markets, prescription pharmaceutical pricing remains subject to continuing governmental control even after initial approval is granted. As a result, we or our strategic partners might obtain marketing approval for a product candidate in a particular country, but then be subject to price regulations that delay commercial launch of the product candidate, possibly for lengthy time periods, and negatively impact the revenue that is generated from the sale of the product in that country. If reimbursement of such product candidates is unavailable or limited in scope or amount, or if pricing is set at unsatisfactory levels, or if there is competition from lower priced cross-border sales, our profitability will be negatively affected.

Security breaches, loss of data and other disruptions could compromise sensitive information related to our business or protected health information or prevent us from accessing critical information and expose us to liability, which could adversely affect our business and our reputation.

In the ordinary course of our business, we collect and store petabytes of sensitive data, including legally protected health information, personally identifiable information, intellectual property and proprietary business information owned or controlled by ourselves or our strategic partners. We manage and maintain our applications and data by utilizing a combination of on-site systems, managed data center systems and cloud-based data center systems. These applications and data encompass a wide variety of business-critical information, including research and development information, commercial information and business and financial information. We face four primary risks relative to protecting this critical information, including loss of access risk, inappropriate disclosure risk, inappropriate modification risk and the risk of being unable to adequately monitor our controls over the first three risks.

The secure processing, storage, maintenance and transmission of this critical information are vital to our operations and business strategy, and we devote significant resources to protecting such information. Although we take measures to protect sensitive information from unauthorized access or disclosure, our information technology and infrastructure and that of any third-party billing and collections provider we may utilize, may be vulnerable to attacks by hackers or viruses or breached due to employee error, malfeasance or other disruptions. Any such breach or interruption could compromise our networks and the information stored there could be accessed by unauthorized parties, publicly disclosed, lost or stolen. Any such access, disclosure or other loss of information could result in legal claims or proceedings, liability under laws that protect the privacy of personal information, such as HIPAA, and regulatory penalties. Although we have implemented security measures and a formal enterprise security program to prevent unauthorized access to patient data, there is no guarantee that we can continue to protect our systems from breach. Unauthorized access, loss or dissemination could also disrupt our operations (including our ability to conduct our analyses, provide test results, bill payors or providers,

[Table of Contents](#)

process claims and appeals, conduct research and development activities, collect, process and prepare company financial information, provide information about any future products, and manage the administrative aspects of our business) and damage our reputation, any of which could adversely affect our business.

The U.S. Office of Civil Rights may impose penalties on us or our CROs if we, or our CROs, do not fully comply with requirements of HIPAA. Penalties will vary significantly depending on factors such as whether we, or our CROs, knew or should have known of the failure to comply, or whether our failure, or that of our CROs, to comply was due to willful neglect. These penalties include civil monetary penalties of \$100 to \$50,000 per violation, up to an annual cap of \$1,500,000 for identical violations. A person who knowingly obtains or discloses individually identifiable health information in violation of HIPAA may face a criminal penalty of up to \$50,000 per violation and up to one-year imprisonment. The criminal penalties increase to \$100,000 per violation and up to five-years imprisonment if the wrongful conduct involves false pretenses, and to \$250,000 per violation and up to 10-years imprisonment if the wrongful conduct involves the intent to sell, transfer, or use identifiable health information for commercial advantage, personal gain, or malicious harm. The U.S. Department of Justice is responsible for criminal prosecutions under HIPAA. Furthermore, in the event of a breach as defined by HIPAA, we have specific reporting requirements to the Office of Civil Rights under the HIPAA regulations as well as to affected individuals, and we may also have additional reporting requirements to other state and federal regulators, including the Federal Trade Commission, and to the media. Issuing such notifications can be costly, time and resource intensive, and can generate significant negative publicity. Breaches of HIPAA may also constitute contractual violations that could lead to contractual damages or terminations.

In addition, the interpretation and application of consumer, health-related and data protection laws in the United States, the European Union (“EU”) and elsewhere are often uncertain, contradictory and in flux. It is possible that these laws may be interpreted and applied in a manner that is inconsistent with our practices. If so, this could result in government-imposed fines or orders requiring that we change our practices, which could adversely affect our business. In addition, these privacy regulations vary between states, may differ from country to country, and may vary based on whether testing is performed in the United States or in the local country. Complying with these various laws could cause us to incur substantial costs or require us to change our business practices and compliance procedures in a manner adverse to our business.

Furthermore, the loss of clinical trial data from completed or future clinical trials could result in delays in our regulatory approval efforts and significantly increase our costs to recover or reproduce the data. Likewise, we rely on other third parties for the manufacture of our product candidates and to conduct clinical trials, and similar events relating to their computer systems could also have a material adverse effect on our business.

Current and future legislation may increase the difficulty and cost for us to commercialize any products that we or our strategic partners develop and affect the prices we may obtain.

The United States and some foreign jurisdictions are considering or have enacted a number of legislative and regulatory proposals to change healthcare systems in ways that could affect our ability to sell any of our product candidates profitably, if such product candidates are approved for sale. Among policy makers and payors in the United States and elsewhere, there is significant interest in promoting changes in healthcare systems with the stated goals of containing healthcare costs, improving quality and expanding access. In the United States, the pharmaceutical industry has been a particular focus of these efforts and has been significantly affected by major legislative initiatives.

In March 2010, the PPACA was enacted, which includes measures that have significantly changed, or will significantly change, the way healthcare is financed by both governmental and private insurers. Among the provisions of the PPACA of importance to the pharmaceutical industry are the following:

- an annual, non-deductible fee on any entity that manufactures or imports certain branded prescription drugs and biologic agents, apportioned among these entities according to their market share in certain government healthcare programs;

[Table of Contents](#)

- an increase in the rebates a manufacturer must pay under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program to 23.1% of the average manufacturer price (“AMP”) for branded drugs or the difference between AMP and best price, whichever is greater. For generic drugs the rebate is 13%;
- Medicare Part D coverage gap discount program, in which manufacturers must agree to offer 50% point-of-sale discounts to negotiated prices of applicable brand drugs to eligible beneficiaries during their coverage gap period;
- extension of manufacturers’ Medicaid rebate liability to covered drugs dispensed to individuals who are enrolled in Medicaid managed care organizations;
- expansion of eligibility criteria for Medicaid programs by, among other things, allowing states to offer Medicaid coverage to additional individuals and by adding new mandatory eligibility categories;
- requirement that applicable manufacturers and group purchasing organizations report annually to the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (“HHS”) information regarding certain payments and other transfers of value given to physicians and teaching hospitals, and any ownership or investment interest physicians, or their immediate family members, have in their company;
- a requirement to annually report drug samples that manufacturers and distributors provide to physicians;
- expansion of healthcare fraud and abuse laws, including the False Claims Act and the Anti-Kickback Statute, new government investigative powers, and enhanced penalties for noncompliance;
- a licensure framework for follow-on biologic products;
- a new Patient-Centered Outcomes Research Institute to oversee, identify priorities in, and conduct comparative clinical effectiveness research, along with funding for such research; and
- establishment of a Center for Medicare & Medicaid Innovation at the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services to test innovative payment and service delivery models to lower Medicare and Medicaid spending, potentially including prescription drug spending.

Since its enactment, there have been judicial and Congressional challenges to certain aspects of the PPACA, including recent tax legislation that removed the financial penalties for people who do not carry health insurance. There is still uncertainty as to whether the PPACA will undergo additional revisions, and we cannot predict the impact of any future modifications, and it is uncertain how any such proposals, if approved, would affect these provisions.

In addition, other legislative changes have been proposed and adopted since the PPACA was enacted. These changes include aggregate reductions to Medicare payments to providers of up to 2% per fiscal year pursuant to the Budget Control Act of 2011, which began in 2013 and will remain in effect through 2025 unless additional Congressional action is taken. The American Taxpayer Relief Act of 2012, among other things, further reduced Medicare payments to several providers, including hospitals and cancer treatment centers, and increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years. These laws may result in additional reductions in Medicare and other healthcare funding, which could have a material adverse effect on customers for our product candidates, if approved, and, accordingly, our financial operations. Also, there has been heightened governmental scrutiny recently over the manner in which drug manufacturers set prices for their marketed products, which have resulted in several Congressional inquiries and proposed bills designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to product pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for drug products.

In the EU similar political, economic and regulatory developments may affect our ability to profitably commercialize our current or any future products. In addition to continuing pressure on prices and cost

[Table of Contents](#)

containment measures, legislative developments at the EU or member state level may result in significant additional requirements or obstacles that may increase our operating costs. In international markets, reimbursement and healthcare payment systems vary significantly by country, and many countries have instituted price ceilings on specific products and therapies. Our future products, if any, might not be considered medically reasonable and necessary for a specific indication or cost-effective by third-party payors, an adequate level of reimbursement might not be available for such products, and third-party payors' reimbursement policies might adversely affect our or our strategic partners' ability to sell any future products profitably.

Legislative and regulatory proposals have been made to expand post-approval requirements and restrict sales and promotional activities for pharmaceutical products. We cannot be sure whether additional legislative changes will be enacted, or whether the FDA regulations, guidance or interpretations will be changed, or what the impact of such changes on the marketing approvals of our product candidates, if any, may be. In addition, increased scrutiny by the U.S. Congress of the FDA's approval process may significantly delay or prevent marketing approval, as well as subject us to more stringent product labeling and post-approval testing and other requirements.

We cannot predict the likelihood, nature or extent of government regulation that may arise from future legislation or administrative action, either in the United States or abroad. If we or our strategic partners are slow or unable to adapt to changes in existing requirements or the adoption of new requirements or policies, or if we or our strategic partners are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, our product candidates may lose any marketing approval that may have been obtained and we may not achieve or sustain profitability, which would adversely affect our business.

Our business may become subject to economic, political, regulatory and other risks associated with international operations.

Our business is subject to risks associated with conducting business internationally. Some of our suppliers and collaborative and clinical trial relationships are located outside the United States. Accordingly, our future results could be harmed by a variety of factors, including:

- economic weakness, including inflation, or political instability in particular foreign economies and markets;
- differing regulatory requirements for drug approvals in foreign countries;
- potentially reduced protection for intellectual property rights;
- difficulties in compliance with non-U.S. laws and regulations;
- changes in non-U.S. regulations and customs, tariffs and trade barriers;
- changes in non-U.S. currency exchange rates and currency controls;
- changes in a specific country's or region's political or economic environment;
- trade protection measures, import or export licensing requirements or other restrictive actions by U.S. or non-U.S. governments;
- differing reimbursement regimes, including price controls;
- negative consequences from changes in tax laws;
- compliance with tax, employment, immigration and labor laws for employees living or traveling abroad;
- workforce uncertainty in countries where labor unrest is more common than in the United States;
- difficulties associated with staffing and managing foreign operations, including differing labor relations;

Table of Contents

- production shortages resulting from any events affecting raw material supply or manufacturing capabilities abroad; and
- business interruptions resulting from geo-political actions, including war and terrorism, or natural disasters including earthquakes, typhoons, floods and fires.

Our business and current and future relationships with customers and third-party payors in the United States and elsewhere will be subject, directly or indirectly, to applicable federal and state anti-kickback, fraud and abuse, false claims, transparency, health information privacy and security and other healthcare laws and regulations, which could expose us to criminal sanctions, civil penalties, contractual damages, reputational harm, administrative burdens, and diminished profits and future earnings.

Healthcare providers, physicians and third-party payors in the United States and elsewhere play a primary role in the recommendation and prescription of any product candidates for which we obtain marketing approval.

Our current and future arrangements with healthcare professionals, principal investigators, consultants, customers, and third-party payors and other entities may expose us to broadly applicable fraud and abuse and other healthcare laws and regulations, including, without limitation, the federal Anti-Kickback Statute and the federal False Claims Act, that may constrain the business or financial arrangements and relationships through which we conduct clinical research on product candidates and market, sell and distribute any products for which we obtain marketing approval. In addition, we may be subject to transparency laws and patient privacy regulation by the federal government and by the U.S. states and foreign jurisdictions in which we conduct our business. The applicable federal, state and foreign healthcare laws and regulations that may affect our ability to operate include, but are not limited to, the following:

- the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, which prohibits, among other things, persons from knowingly and willfully soliciting, offering, receiving or providing remuneration (including any kickback, bribe or rebate), directly or indirectly, in cash or in kind, to induce or reward either the referral of an individual for, or the purchase, order or recommendation of, any good or service for which payment may be made under federal and state healthcare programs such as Medicare and Medicaid;
- federal civil and criminal false claims laws and civil monetary penalty laws, including the federal False Claims Act, which impose criminal and civil penalties, including civil whistleblower or qui tam actions, against individuals or entities for knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, to the federal government, including the Medicare and Medicaid programs, or other third-party payor claims for payment that are false or fraudulent or making a false statement to avoid, decrease or conceal an obligation to pay money to the federal government;
- the U.S. Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (“HIPAA”) which among other things, imposes criminal liability for knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program or to obtain, by means of false or fraudulent pretenses, representations, or promises, any of the money or property owned by, or under the custody or control of, any healthcare benefit program, regardless of the payor (e.g. public or private) and knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up by any trick or device a material fact or making any materially false statements in connection with the delivery of or payment for healthcare benefits, items or services relating to healthcare matters;
- HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act of 2009 (“HITECH”) and its implementing regulations, which imposes certain obligations, including mandatory contractual terms, with respect to safeguarding the privacy, security and transmission of individually identifiable health information without the appropriate authorization by entities subject to the law, such as health plans, healthcare clearinghouses and healthcare providers and their respective business associates;
- the federal Open Payments program under the Physician Payments Sunshine Act, created under Section 6002 of the PPACA and its implementing regulations, requires certain manufacturers of drugs,

[Table of Contents](#)

devices, biologics and medical supplies for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid or the Children's Health Insurance Program (with certain exceptions) to report annually to HHS information related to "payments or other transfers of value" made to physicians (defined to include doctors, dentists, optometrists, podiatrists and chiropractors) and teaching hospitals, and applicable manufacturers and applicable group purchasing organizations to report annually to HHS ownership and investment interests held by physicians (as defined above) and their immediate family members; and

- analogous state and foreign laws and regulations, including: state anti-kickback and false claims laws which may apply to our business practices, including, but not limited to, research, distribution, sales and marketing arrangements and claims involving healthcare items or services reimbursed by state governmental and non-governmental third-party payors, including private insurers; state laws that require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry's voluntary compliance guidelines and the applicable compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government; state laws that require drug manufacturers to track gifts and other remuneration and items of value provided to healthcare professionals and entities and file reports relating to pricing and marketing information; and state and foreign laws that govern the privacy and security of health information in specified circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways and often are not pre-empted by HIPAA, thus complicating compliance efforts.

Because of the breadth of these laws and the narrowness of the statutory exceptions and safe harbors available under the U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute and analogous state laws, it is possible that some of our current and future business activities could be subject to challenge under one or more of such laws.

Efforts to ensure that our business arrangements with third parties will comply with applicable healthcare laws and regulations may involve substantial costs. It is possible that governmental authorities will conclude that our business practices may not comply with current or future statutes, regulations or case law involving applicable fraud and abuse or other healthcare laws and regulations. If our operations are found to be in violation of any of these laws or any other governmental regulations that may apply to us, we may be subject to significant civil, criminal and administrative penalties, including, without limitation, damages, fines, imprisonment, exclusion from participation in government healthcare programs, such as Medicare and Medicaid, additional reporting requirements and oversight if we become subject to a corporate integrity agreement or similar agreement to resolve allegations of non-compliance with these laws and the curtailment or restructuring of our operations, which could have a material adverse effect on our business. If any of the physicians or other providers or entities with whom we expect to do business, including our strategic partners, is found not to be in compliance with applicable laws, it may be subject to criminal, civil or administrative sanctions, including exclusions from participation in government healthcare programs, which could also materially affect our business.

We are subject to U.S. and certain foreign export and import controls, sanctions, embargoes, anti-corruption laws, and anti-money laundering laws and regulations. Compliance with these legal standards could impair our ability to compete in domestic and international markets. We can face criminal liability and other serious consequences for violations which can harm our business.

We are subject to export control and import laws and regulations, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, U.S. Customs regulations, various economic and trade sanctions regulations administered by the U.S. Treasury Department's Office of Foreign Assets Controls, the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended, the U.S. domestic bribery statute contained in 18 U.S.C. § 201, the U.S. Travel Act, the USA PATRIOT Act, the United Kingdom Bribery Act 2010, the Proceeds of Crime Act 2002, and other state and national anti-bribery and anti-money laundering laws in the countries in which we conduct activities. Anti-corruption laws are interpreted broadly and prohibit companies and their employees, agents, contractors, and other partners from authorizing, promising, offering, or providing, directly or indirectly, improper payments or anything else of value to recipients in the public or private sector. We may engage third parties for clinical trials outside of the United States, to sell our products abroad once we enter a commercialization phase, or to obtain

necessary permits, licenses, patent registrations, and other regulatory approvals. We may have direct or indirect interactions with officials and employees of government agencies or government-affiliated hospitals, universities, and other organizations. We can be held liable for the corrupt or other illegal activities of our employees, agents, contractors, and other partners, even if we do not explicitly authorize or have actual knowledge of such activities. Any violation of the laws and regulations described above may result in substantial civil and criminal fines and penalties, imprisonment, the loss of export or import privileges, debarment, tax reassessments, breach of contract and fraud litigation, reputational harm, and other consequences.

Risks Related to Our Financial Position and Need for Additional Capital

We have incurred significant losses since inception and anticipate that we will continue to incur losses for the foreseeable future. We have no products approved for commercial sale, and to date we have not generated any revenue or profit from product sales. We may never achieve or sustain profitability.

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company. We have incurred significant losses since our inception. Our net loss for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 and for the three months ended March 31, 2018 was \$10.4 million, \$33.8 million and \$21.3 million, respectively. As of March 31, 2018 our accumulated deficit was approximately \$130.0 million. We expect to continue to incur losses for the foreseeable future, and we expect these losses to increase as we continue our research and development of, and seek regulatory approvals for, our product candidates, prepare for and begin to commercialize any approved product candidates and add infrastructure and personnel to support our product development efforts and operations as a public company. The net losses and negative cash flows incurred to date, together with expected future losses, have had, and likely will continue to have, an adverse effect on our shareholders' deficit and working capital. The amount of future net losses will depend, in part, on the rate of future growth of our expenses and our ability to generate revenue.

Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with pharmaceutical product development, we are unable to accurately predict the timing or amount of increased expenses or when, or if, we will be able to achieve profitability. For example, our expenses could increase if we are required by the FDA to perform trials in addition to those that we currently expect to perform, or if there are any delays in completing our currently planned clinical trials or in the development of any of our product candidates.

To become and remain profitable, we must succeed in developing and commercializing product candidates with significant market potential. This will require us to be successful in a range of challenging activities for which we are only in the preliminary stages, including developing product candidates, obtaining regulatory approval for such product candidates, and manufacturing, marketing and selling those product candidates for which we may obtain regulatory approval. We may never succeed in these activities and may never generate revenue from product sales that is significant enough to achieve profitability. Even if we achieve profitability in the future, we may not be able to sustain profitability in subsequent periods. Our failure to become or remain profitable would depress our market value and could impair our ability to raise capital, expand our business, develop other product candidates, or continue our operations. A decline in the value of our company could also cause our shareholders to lose all or part of their investment.

Biopharmaceutical product development is a highly speculative undertaking and involves a substantial degree of uncertainty. We have never generated any revenue from product sales and may never be profitable.

We have devoted substantially all of our financial resources and efforts to developing our proprietary therapeutic platforms, identifying potential product candidates and conducting preclinical studies and a clinical trial. We and our partners are still in the early stages of developing our product candidates, and we have not completed development of any products. Our revenue to date has been primarily revenue from the license of our proprietary therapeutic platforms for the development of product candidates by others or revenue from our strategic partners. Our ability to generate revenue and achieve profitability depends in large part on our ability, alone or with our strategic partners, to achieve milestones and to successfully complete the development of, obtain the necessary regulatory approvals for, and commercialize, product candidates. We do not anticipate generating revenue from sales of products for the foreseeable future.

[Table of Contents](#)

We will require substantial additional funding, which may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all, and, if not available, may require us to delay, scale back, or cease our product development programs or operations.

We are currently advancing two of our product candidates through preclinical and clinical development as well as other potential product candidates through discovery. Developing pharmaceutical products, including conducting preclinical studies and clinical trials, is expensive. In order to obtain such regulatory approval, we will be required to conduct clinical trials for each indication for each of our product candidates. We will continue to require additional funding to complete the development and commercialization of our product candidates and to continue to advance the development of our other product candidates, and such funding may not be available on acceptable terms or at all. Furthermore, in August 2016 we entered into a license agreement with Innovative Targeting Solutions Inc. (“ITS”) which requires licensing payments to ITS totaling \$12.0 million over the following five-year period.

Although it is difficult to predict our liquidity requirements, based upon our current operating plan, we believe that our existing cash and cash equivalents and short term investments will enable us to fund our operating expenses and capital expenditure requirement into 2019. We may also be eligible to receive certain research, development and commercial milestone payments in the future, as described under “Our Business – Strategic Partnerships and Collaborations.” However, because successful development of our product candidates and the achievement of milestones by our strategic partners is uncertain, we are unable to estimate the actual funds we will require to complete research and development and to commercialize our product candidates.

Our future funding requirements will depend on many factors, including but not limited to:

- the number and characteristics of other product candidates that we pursue;
- the scope, progress, timing, cost and results of research, preclinical development, and clinical trials;
- the costs, timing and outcome of seeking and obtaining FDA and non-U.S. regulatory approvals;
- the costs associated with manufacturing our product candidates and establishing sales, marketing and distribution capabilities;
- our ability to maintain, expand and defend the scope of our intellectual property portfolio, including the amount and timing of any payments we may be required to make in connection with the licensing, filing, defense and enforcement of any patents or other intellectual property rights;
- our need and ability to hire additional management, scientific and medical personnel;
- the effect of competing products that may limit market penetration of our product candidates;
- our need to implement additional internal systems and infrastructure, including financial and reporting systems; and
- the economic and other terms, timing of and success of our existing strategic partnerships, and any collaboration, licensing, or other arrangements into which we may enter in the future, including the timing of receipt of any milestone or royalty payments under these agreements.

Until we can generate a sufficient amount of product revenue to finance our cash requirements, which we may never do, we expect to finance future cash needs primarily through a combination of public and private equity offerings, debt financings, strategic partnerships and grant funding.

If sufficient funds on acceptable terms are not available when needed, or at all, we could be forced to significantly reduce operating expenses and delay, scale back or eliminate one or more of our development programs or our business operations.

Raising additional capital may cause dilution to our shareholders, restrict our operations or require us to relinquish substantial rights.

To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, our shareholders' ownership interest will be diluted, and the terms of these new securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect our shareholders' rights as common shareholders. Debt financing, if available at all, may involve agreements that include covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take specific actions such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures, or declaring dividends. If we raise additional funds through partnerships, collaborations, strategic alliances, or licensing arrangements with third parties, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies, product candidates, or future revenue streams, or grant licenses on terms that are not favorable to us. We cannot assure that we will be able to obtain additional funding if and when necessary. If we are unable to obtain adequate financing on a timely basis, we could be required to delay, scale back or eliminate one or more of our development programs or grant rights to develop and market product candidates that we would otherwise prefer to develop and market ourselves.

Unstable market and economic conditions may have serious adverse consequences on our business and financial condition.

Global credit and financial markets experienced extreme disruptions at various points over the last decade, characterized by diminished liquidity and credit availability, declines in consumer confidence, declines in economic growth, increases in unemployment rates and uncertainty about economic stability. If another such disruption in credit and financial markets and deterioration of confidence in economic conditions occurs, our business may be adversely affected. If the equity and credit markets were to deteriorate significantly in the future, it may make any necessary debt or equity financing more difficult to complete, more costly, and more dilutive. Failure to secure any necessary financing in a timely manner and on favorable terms could have a material adverse effect on our growth strategy, financial performance and share price and could require us to delay or abandon development or commercialization plans. In addition, there is a risk that one or more of our current strategic partners, service providers, manufacturers and other partners would not survive or be able to meet their commitments to us under such circumstances, which could directly affect our ability to attain our operating goals on schedule and on budget.

We are subject to risks associated with currency fluctuations, and changes in foreign currency exchange rates could impact our results of operations.

Management assesses its functional currency to be the U.S. dollar based on management's analysis of the primary economic environment in which we operate.

As of March 31, 2018, approximately 7.4% of our cash and cash equivalents was denominated in Canadian dollars. Fluctuations in U.S. dollar and Canadian dollar exchange rates could result in a material increase in reported expenses relative to revenue, and therefore could cause our operating income (expense) to appear to decline materially. Fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates also impact the reporting of our receivables and payables in non-Canadian currencies. As a result of such foreign currency fluctuations, it could be more difficult to detect underlying trends in our business and results of operations. In addition, to the extent that fluctuations in currency exchange rates cause our results of operations to differ from our expectations or the expectations of our investors, the trading price of our common shares could be adversely affected.

From time to time, we may engage in exchange rate hedging activities in an effort to mitigate the impact of exchange rate fluctuations. For example, we maintain a natural currency hedge against fluctuations in the U.S./Canadian foreign exchange rate by matching the amount of U.S. dollar and Canadian dollar investments to the expected amount of future U.S. dollar and Canadian dollar obligations, respectively. Any hedging technique we implement may fail to be effective. If our hedging activities are not effective, changes in currency exchange rates may have a more significant impact on the trading price of our common shares.

Risks Related to Our Dependence on Third Parties

Our existing strategic partnerships are important to our business, and future strategic partnerships will likely also be important to us. If we are unable to maintain our strategic partnerships, or if these strategic partnerships are not successful, our business could be adversely affected.

We have limited capabilities for drug development and do not yet have any capability for sales, marketing or distribution. Accordingly, we have entered into strategic partnerships with other companies that we believe can provide such capabilities, including our collaboration and license agreements with Merck, Lilly, Celgene, GSK, Daiichi Sankyo and Janssen. These relationships also have provided us with non-dilutive funding for our wholly owned pipeline and therapeutic platforms and we expect to receive additional funding under these strategic partnerships in the future. Our existing strategic partnerships, and any future strategic partnerships we enter into, may pose a number of risks, including the following:

- strategic partners have significant discretion in determining the efforts and resources that they will apply to these partnerships;
- strategic partners may not perform their obligations as expected;
- strategic partners may not pursue development and commercialization of any product candidates that achieve regulatory approval or may elect not to continue or renew development or commercialization programs based on clinical trial results, changes in the partners' strategic focus or available funding, or external factors, such as an acquisition, that divert resources or create competing priorities;
- strategic partners may delay clinical trials, provide insufficient funding for a clinical trial program, stop a clinical trial or abandon a product candidate, repeat or conduct new clinical trials or require a new formulation of a product candidate for clinical testing;
- strategic partners could independently develop, or develop with third parties, products that compete directly or indirectly with our product candidates if the strategic partners believe that competitive products are more likely to be successfully developed or can be commercialized under terms that are more economically attractive than our product candidates;
- product candidates discovered in collaboration with us may be viewed by our strategic partners as competitive with their own product candidates or products, which may cause strategic partners to cease to devote resources to the commercialization of our product candidates;
- a strategic partner with marketing and distribution rights to one or more of our product candidates that achieve regulatory approval may not commit sufficient resources to the marketing and distribution of such product candidates;
- disagreements with strategic partners, including disagreements over proprietary rights, contract interpretation or the preferred course of development, might cause delays or termination of the research, development or commercialization of product candidates, might lead to additional responsibilities for us with respect to product candidates, or might result in litigation or arbitration, any of which would be time-consuming and expensive;
- strategic partners may not properly maintain or defend our intellectual property rights or may use our proprietary information in such a way as to invite litigation that could jeopardize or invalidate our intellectual property or proprietary information or expose us to potential litigation;
- strategic partners may infringe the intellectual property rights of third parties, which may expose us to litigation and potential liability; and
- strategic partnerships may be terminated for the convenience of the partner and, if terminated, we could be required to raise additional capital to pursue further development or commercialization of the applicable product candidates. For example, each of our collaboration and license agreements with Merck, Lilly, Celgene, GSK, Daiichi Sankyo and Janssen may be terminated for convenience upon the completion of a specified notice period.

We may not realize the anticipated benefits of our strategic partnerships.

If our strategic partnerships do not result in the successful development and commercialization of product candidates or if one of our partners terminates its agreement with us, we may not receive any future research funding or milestone or royalty payments under the collaboration. Moreover, our estimates of the potential revenue we are eligible to receive under our strategic partnerships may include potential payments in respect of therapeutic programs for which our partners have discontinued development or may discontinue development in the future. Furthermore, our strategic partners may not keep us informed as to the status of their in-house research activities and they may fail to exercise options embedded within certain agreements. Any discontinuation of product development by our strategic partners could reduce the amounts receivable under our strategic partnerships below the stated amounts we are eligible to receive under those agreements. If we do not receive the funding we expect under these agreements, our development of our therapeutic platforms and product candidates could be delayed and we may need additional resources to develop product candidates and our therapeutic platforms. All of the risks relating to product development, regulatory approval and commercialization described in our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q also apply to the activities of our program strategic partners. For example, in 2017 Lilly nominated a bispecific candidate from their 2014 agreement with us for preclinical development and discontinued the development of two other bispecific antibodies due to strategic portfolio realignment in those particular disease areas. As a result, we have updated our projections and are currently eligible to receive up to \$125.0 million under this agreement, comprised of research milestone payments of up to \$2.0 million (\$2.0 million earned in 2016), IND submission milestone payments of up to \$8.0 million, development milestone payments of up to \$20.0 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$95.0 million.

Additionally, subject to its contractual obligations to us, if one of our strategic partners is involved in a business combination, the partner might deemphasize or terminate the development or commercialization of any product candidate licensed to it by us. If one of our strategic partners terminates its agreement with us, we may find it more difficult to attract new partners.

We face significant competition in seeking new strategic partners.

For some of our product candidates, we may in the future determine to collaborate with additional pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies for development and potential commercialization of therapeutic products. Our ability to reach a definitive agreement for a collaboration will depend, among other things, upon our assessment of the strategic partner's resources and expertise, the terms and conditions of the proposed collaboration and the proposed strategic partner's evaluation of a number of factors. These factors may include the design or results of clinical trials, the likelihood of approval by the FDA or similar regulatory authorities outside the United States, the potential market for the subject product candidate, the costs and complexities of manufacturing and delivering such product candidate to patients, the potential of competing products, the existence of uncertainty with respect to our ownership of technology, which can exist if there is a challenge to such ownership without regard to the merits of the challenge and industry and market conditions generally. The strategic partner may also consider alternative product candidates or technologies for similar indications that may be available to collaborate on and whether such a collaboration could be more attractive than the one with us for our product candidate.

Strategic partnerships are complex and time-consuming to negotiate and document. In addition, there have been a significant number of recent business combinations among large pharmaceutical companies that have resulted in a reduced number of potential future strategic partners. If we are unable to reach agreements with suitable strategic partners on a timely basis, on acceptable terms, or at all, we may have to curtail the development of a product candidate, reduce or delay one or more of our other development programs, delay its potential commercialization or reduce the scope of any sales or marketing activities, or increase our expenditures and undertake development or commercialization activities at our own expense. If we elect to fund and undertake development or commercialization activities on our own, we may need to obtain additional expertise and

[Table of Contents](#)

additional capital, which may not be available to us on acceptable terms or at all. If we fail to enter into strategic partnerships and do not have sufficient funds or expertise to undertake the necessary development and commercialization activities, we may not be able to further develop our product candidates or bring them to market or continue to develop our therapeutic platforms and our business may be materially and adversely affected.

We rely on third-party manufacturers to produce our clinical product candidates. Any failure by a third-party manufacturer to produce acceptable product candidate for us may delay or impair our ability to initiate or complete our clinical trials or commercialize approved products.

We do not currently own or operate any manufacturing facilities nor do we have any in-house manufacturing experience or personnel. We rely on our strategic partners to manufacture product candidates licensed to them or work with multiple third-party contract manufacturers to produce sufficient quantities of materials required for the manufacture of our product candidates for preclinical testing and clinical trials, in compliance with applicable regulatory and quality standards, and intend to do so for the commercial manufacture of our products. If we are unable to arrange for such third-party manufacturing sources, or fail to do so on commercially reasonable terms, we may not be able to successfully produce sufficient supply of product candidate or we may be delayed in doing so. Such failure or substantial delay could materially harm our business.

Reliance on third-party manufacturers entails risks to which we would not be subject if we manufactured product candidates ourselves, including reliance on the third party for regulatory compliance and quality control and assurance, volume production, the possibility of breach of the manufacturing agreement by the third party because of factors beyond our control (including a failure to synthesize and manufacture our product candidates in accordance with our product specifications) and the possibility of termination or nonrenewal of the agreement by the third party at a time that is costly or damaging to us. In addition, the FDA, EMA and other regulatory authorities require that our product candidates be manufactured according to current cGMPs and similar foreign standards. Pharmaceutical manufacturers and their subcontractors are required to register their facilities or products manufactured at the time of submission of the marketing application and then annually thereafter with the FDA and certain state and foreign agencies. They are also subject to periodic unannounced inspections by the FDA, state and other foreign authorities. Any subsequent discovery of problems with a product, or a manufacturing or laboratory facility used by us or our strategic partners, may result in restrictions on the product or on the manufacturing or laboratory facility, including marketed product recall, suspension of manufacturing, product seizure, or a voluntary withdrawal of the drug from the market. We may have little to no control regarding the occurrence of third-party manufacturer incidents. Any failure by our third-party manufacturers to comply with cGMP or failure to scale up manufacturing processes, including any failure to deliver sufficient quantities of product candidates in a timely manner, could lead to a delay in, or failure to obtain, regulatory approval of any of our product candidates.

The manufacture of our product candidates is complex. We and our third-party manufacturers may encounter difficulties in production. If we encounter any such difficulties, our ability to supply our product candidates for clinical trials or, if approved, for commercial sale could be delayed or halted entirely.

The manufacture of biopharmaceutical products is complex and requires significant expertise and capital investment, including the development of advanced manufacturing techniques and process controls. The process of manufacturing our product candidates is extremely susceptible to product loss due to contamination, equipment failure or improper installation or operation of equipment, vendor or operator error, contamination and inconsistency in yields, variability in product characteristics and difficulties in scaling the production process. Even minor deviations from normal manufacturing processes could result in reduced production yields, product defects and other supply disruptions. If microbial, viral or other contaminations are discovered in our product candidates or in the manufacturing facilities in which our product candidates are made, such manufacturing facilities may need to be closed for an extended period of time to investigate and remedy the contamination. All of our engineered antibodies are manufactured by starting cells that are stored in a cell bank. We have one master

[Table of Contents](#)

cell bank for each antibody manufactured in accordance with cGMP and multiple working cell banks. While we believe we would have adequate back up should any cell bank be lost in a catastrophic event, it is possible that we could lose multiple cell banks and have our manufacturing severely impacted by the need to replace the cell banks. Any adverse developments affecting manufacturing operations for our product candidates, if any are approved, may result in shipment delays, inventory shortages, lot failures, product withdrawals or recalls, or other interruptions in the supply of our products. We may also have to take inventory write-offs and incur other charges and expenses for products that fail to meet specifications, undertake costly remediation efforts or seek more costly manufacturing alternatives.

We rely on third parties to monitor, support, conduct and oversee clinical trials of the product candidates that we are developing and, in some cases, to maintain regulatory files for those product candidates. We may not be able to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates or commercialize any products that may result from our development efforts, if we are not able to maintain or secure agreements with such third parties on acceptable terms, if these third parties do not perform their services as required, or if these third parties fail to timely transfer any regulatory information held by them to us.

We rely on entities outside of our control, which may include academic institutions, CROs, hospitals, clinics and other third-party strategic partners, to monitor, support, conduct and oversee preclinical studies and clinical trials of our current and future product candidates. We also rely on third parties to perform clinical trials on our current and future product candidates when they reach that stage. As a result, we have less control over the timing and cost of these studies and the ability to recruit trial subjects than if we conducted these trials with our own personnel.

If we are unable to maintain or enter into agreements with these third parties on acceptable terms, or if any such engagement is terminated prematurely, we may be unable to enroll patients on a timely basis or otherwise conduct our trials in the manner we anticipate. In addition, there is no guarantee that these third parties will devote adequate time and resources to our studies or perform as required by our contract or in accordance with regulatory requirements, including maintenance of clinical trial information regarding our product candidates. If these third parties fail to meet expected deadlines, fail to transfer to us any regulatory information in a timely manner, fail to adhere to protocols or fail to act in accordance with regulatory requirements or our agreements with them, or if they otherwise perform in a substandard manner or in a way that compromises the quality or accuracy of their activities or the data they obtain, then clinical trials of our product candidates may be extended or delayed with additional costs incurred, or our data may be rejected by the FDA, EMA or other regulatory agencies.

Ultimately, we are responsible for ensuring that each of our clinical trials is conducted in accordance with the applicable protocol, legal, regulatory and scientific standards, and our reliance on third parties does not relieve us of our regulatory responsibilities.

We and our CROs are required to comply with cGCP regulations and guidelines enforced by the FDA, the competent authorities of the member states of the EU and comparable foreign regulatory authorities for products in clinical development. Regulatory authorities enforce these cGCP regulations through periodic inspections of clinical trial sponsors, principal investigators and clinical trial sites. If we or any of our CROs fail to comply with applicable cGCP regulations, the clinical data generated in our clinical trials may be deemed unreliable and our submission of marketing applications may be delayed or the FDA may require us to perform additional clinical trials before approving our marketing applications. Upon inspection, the FDA could determine that any of our clinical trials fail or have failed to comply with applicable cGCP regulations. In addition, our clinical trials must be conducted with product produced under the cGMP regulations enforced by the FDA, and our clinical trials may require a large number of test subjects. Our failure to comply with these regulations may require us to repeat clinical trials, which would delay the regulatory approval process and increase our costs. Moreover, our business may be implicated if any of our CROs violates federal or state fraud and abuse or false claims laws and regulations or healthcare privacy and security laws.

[Table of Contents](#)

If any of our clinical trial sites terminate for any reason, we may experience the loss of follow-up information on patients enrolled in our ongoing clinical trials unless we are able to transfer the care of those patients to another qualified clinical trial site. Further, if our relationship with any of our CROs is terminated, we may be unable to enter into arrangements with alternative CROs on commercially reasonable terms, or at all.

Switching or adding CROs or other suppliers can involve substantial cost and require extensive management time and focus. In addition, there is a natural transition period when a new CRO or supplier commences work. As a result, delays may occur, which can materially impact our ability to meet our desired clinical development timelines. If we are required to seek alternative supply arrangements, the resulting delays and potential inability to find a suitable replacement could materially and adversely impact our business.

We rely on third parties for various operational and administrative aspects of our business, including for certain cloud-based software platforms, which impact our financial, operational and research activities. If any of these third parties fail to provide timely, accurate and ongoing service or if the cloud-based platforms suffer outages that we are unable to mitigate, our business may be adversely affected.

We currently rely upon third-party consultants and contractors to provide certain operational and administrative services. These services include external tax advice and clinical and research consultation. The failure of any of these third parties to provide accurate and timely service may adversely impact our business operations. In addition, if such third-party service providers were to cease operations, temporarily or permanently, face financial distress or other business disruption, or increase their fees, or if our relationships with these providers deteriorate, we could suffer increased costs until an equivalent provider could be found, if at all, or we could develop internal capabilities, if ever.

In addition, if we are unsuccessful in choosing or finding high-quality partners, if we fail to negotiate cost-effective relationships with them, or if we ineffectively manage these relationships, it could have an adverse impact on our business and financial performance.

Further, our operations depend on the continuing and efficient operation of our information technology and communications systems and infrastructure, and specifically on the “cloud-based” platforms. These platforms are vulnerable to damage or interruption from earthquakes, vandalism, sabotage, terrorist attacks, floods, fires, power outages, telecommunications failures, and computer viruses or other deliberate attempts to harm the systems. The occurrence of a natural or intentional disaster, any decision to close a facility we are using without adequate notice, or particularly an unanticipated problem at our cloud-based virtual server facility, could result in harmful interruptions in our service, resulting in adverse effects to our business.

Risks Related to Our Intellectual Property

Our commercial success depends significantly on our ability to operate without infringing the patents and other proprietary rights of third parties.

Our success will depend in part on our ability to operate without infringing the proprietary rights of third parties. Other entities may have or obtain patents or proprietary rights that could limit our ability to make, use, sell, offer for sale or import our future approved products or impair our competitive position. For example, certain patents and patent applications held by third parties cover Fab and Fc region engineering methods for bispecific antibodies, and antibodies having mutations in Fab heavy and light chain regions and Fc regions to generate correctly paired bispecific antibodies. If our products or our strategic partners’ products incorporate any Fab or Fc region mutations covered by any claims of these patents or patents that may issue from these applications and we are unable to invalidate those patents, or if licenses for them are not available on commercially reasonable terms or at all, our business could be materially harmed.

We are also aware of third-party patents and patent applications containing claims directed to compositions and methods for treating various forms of cancer with antibodies targeting HER2, alone or in combination with other

[Table of Contents](#)

anti-cancer agents, as well as compositions and methods for making and using anti-HER2 antibody conjugates comprising certain toxins, which patents and applications could potentially be construed to cover our product candidates and the use thereof to treat cancer. If our products or our strategic partners' products were to be found to infringe any such patents, and we were unable to invalidate those patents, or if licenses for them are not available on commercially reasonable terms, or at all, our business could be materially harmed. These patents may not expire before we receive marketing authorization for our product candidates, and could delay the commercial launch or one or more future products. There is also no assurance that there are not third-party patents or patent applications of which we are aware, but which we do not believe are relevant to our business, which may, nonetheless, ultimately be found to limit our ability to make, use, sell, offer for sale or import our future approved products or impair our competitive position.

Patents that we may ultimately be found to infringe could be issued to third parties. Third parties may have or obtain valid and enforceable patents or proprietary rights that could block us from developing product candidates using our technology. Our failure to obtain a license to any technology that we require may materially harm our business, financial condition and results of operations. Moreover, our failure to maintain a license to any technology that we require may also materially harm our business, financial condition and results of operations. Furthermore, we would be exposed to a threat of litigation.

In the pharmaceutical industry, significant litigation and other proceedings regarding patents, patent applications, trademarks and other intellectual property rights have become commonplace. The types of situations in which we may become a party to such litigation or proceedings include:

- we or our strategic partners may initiate litigation or other proceedings against third parties seeking to invalidate the patents held by those third parties, to obtain a judgment that our products or processes do not infringe those third parties' patents or to obtain a judgement that those parties' patents are unenforceable;
- if our competitors file patent applications that claim technology also claimed by us or our licensors, we or our licensors may be required to participate in interference, derivation or opposition proceedings to determine the priority of invention, which could jeopardize our patent rights and potentially provide a third party with a dominant patent position;
- if third parties initiate litigation claiming that our processes or products infringe their patent or other intellectual property rights or initiating other proceedings, including post-grant proceedings and *inter partes* reviews, we and our strategic partners will need to defend against such proceedings; and
- if a license to necessary technology is terminated, the licensor may initiate litigation claiming that our processes or products infringe or misappropriate their patent or other intellectual property rights and/or that we breached our obligations under the license agreement, and we and our strategic partners would need to defend against such proceedings.

These lawsuits would be costly and could affect our results of operations and divert the attention of our management and scientific personnel. Some of our competitors may be able to sustain the cost of such litigation and proceedings more effectively than we can because of their substantially greater resources. There is a risk that a court would decide that we or our strategic partners are infringing the third party's patents and would order us or our strategic partners to stop the activities covered by the patents. In that event, we or our strategic partners may not have a viable alternative to the technology protected by the patent and may need to halt work on the affected product candidate or cease commercialization of an approved product. In addition, there is a risk that a court will order us or our strategic partners to pay third-party damages or some other monetary award, depending upon the jurisdiction. An adverse outcome in any litigation or other proceeding could subject us to significant liabilities to third parties, potentially including treble damages and attorneys' fees if we are found to have willfully infringed, and we may be required to cease using the technology that is at issue or to license the technology from third parties. We may not be able to obtain any required licenses on commercially acceptable terms or at all. Any of these outcomes could have a material adverse effect on our business.

If we are unable to obtain, maintain and enforce patent and trade secret protection for our product candidates and related technology, our business could be materially harmed.

Our strategy depends on our ability to identify and seek patent protection for our discoveries. This process is expensive and time consuming, and we may not be able to file and prosecute all necessary or desirable patent applications at a reasonable cost or in a timely manner or in all jurisdictions where protection may be commercially advantageous. It is also possible that we will fail to identify patentable aspects of our research and development output before it is too late to obtain patent protection. Moreover, in some circumstances, we may not have the right to control the preparation, filing and prosecution of patent applications, or to maintain the patents, covering technology that we have licensed from third parties. Therefore, our owned or in-licensed patents and patent applications may not be prosecuted and enforced in a manner consistent with the best interests of our business. Our patent applications cannot be enforced against third parties practicing the technology claimed in such applications unless, and until, patents issue from such applications, and then only to the extent the issued claims cover the technology. The patent applications that we own or in-license may fail to result in issued patents with claims that cover our current and future product candidates in the United States or in other foreign countries.

Moreover, the patent position of biopharmaceutical companies generally is highly uncertain, involves complex legal and factual questions and has in recent years been the subject of much litigation. The issuance of a patent does not ensure that it is valid or enforceable. Third parties may challenge the validity, enforceability or scope of our issued patents, and such patents may be narrowed, invalidated, circumvented, or deemed unenforceable. In addition, changes in law may introduce uncertainty in the enforceability or scope of patents owned by biotechnology companies. If our patents are narrowed, invalidated or held unenforceable, third parties may be able to commercialize our technology or products and compete directly with us without payment to us. There is no assurance that all potentially relevant prior art relating to our patents and patent applications has been found, and such prior art could potentially invalidate one or more of our patents or prevent a patent from issuing from one or more of our pending patent applications. There is also no assurance that there is not prior art of which we are aware, but which we do not believe affects the validity or enforceability of a claim in our patents and patent applications, which may, nonetheless, ultimately be found to affect the validity or enforceability of a claim. Furthermore, even if our patents are unchallenged, they may not adequately protect our intellectual property, provide exclusivity for our product candidates, prevent others from designing around our claims or provide us with a competitive advantage. The legal systems of certain countries do not favor the aggressive enforcement of patents, and the laws of foreign countries may not allow us to protect our inventions with patents to the same extent as the laws of the United States. Because patent applications in the United States and many foreign jurisdictions are typically not published until 18 months after filing, or in some cases not at all, and because publications of discoveries in scientific literature lag behind actual discoveries, we cannot be certain that we were the first to make the inventions claimed in our issued patents or pending patent applications, or that we were the first to file for protection of the inventions set forth in our patents or patent applications. As a result, we may not be able to obtain or maintain protection for certain inventions. Therefore, the issuance, validity, enforceability, scope and commercial value of our patents in the United States and in foreign countries cannot be predicted with certainty and, as a result, any patents that we own or license may not provide sufficient protection against competitors. We may not be able to obtain or maintain patent protection from our pending patent applications, from those we may file in the future, or from those we may license from third parties. Moreover, even if we are able to obtain patent protection, such patent protection may be of insufficient scope to achieve our business objectives. In addition, the issuance of a patent does not give us the right to practice the patented invention. Third parties may have blocking patents that could prevent us from marketing our own patented product and practicing our own patented technology.

Our patents covering one or more of our products or product candidates could be found invalid or unenforceable if challenged.

Any of our intellectual property rights could be challenged or invalidated despite measures we take to obtain patent and other intellectual property protection with respect to our product candidates and proprietary

technology. For example, if we were to initiate legal proceedings against a third party to enforce a patent covering one of our product candidates, the defendant could counterclaim that our patent is invalid and/or unenforceable. In patent litigation in the United States and in some other jurisdictions, defendant counterclaims alleging invalidity and/or unenforceability are commonplace. Grounds for a validity challenge could be an alleged failure to meet any of several statutory requirements, for example, lack of novelty, obviousness or non-enablement. Grounds for an unenforceability assertion could be an allegation that someone connected with prosecution of the patent withheld material information from the United States Patent and Trademark Office (“USPTO”) or the applicable foreign counterpart, or made a misleading statement, during prosecution. A litigant or the USPTO itself could challenge our patents on this basis even if we believe that we have conducted our patent prosecution in accordance with the duty of candor and in good faith. The outcome following such a challenge is unpredictable.

With respect to challenges to the validity of our patents, for example, there might be invalidating prior art, of which we and the patent examiner were unaware during prosecution. If a defendant were to prevail on a legal assertion of invalidity and/or unenforceability, we would lose at least part, and perhaps all, of the patent protection on a product candidate. Even if a defendant does not prevail on a legal assertion of invalidity and/or unenforceability, our patent claims may be construed in a manner that would limit our ability to enforce such claims against the defendant and others. The cost of defending such a challenge, particularly in a foreign jurisdiction, and any resulting loss of patent protection could have a material adverse impact on one or more of our product candidates and our business.

Enforcing our intellectual property rights against third parties may also cause such third parties to file other counterclaims against us, which could be costly to defend, particularly in a foreign jurisdiction, and could require us to pay substantial damages, cease the sale of certain products or enter into a license agreement and pay royalties (which may not be possible on commercially reasonable terms or at all). Any efforts to enforce our intellectual property rights are also likely to be costly and may divert the efforts of our scientific and management personnel.

Our intellectual property rights will not necessarily provide us with competitive advantages.

The degree of future protection afforded by our intellectual property rights is uncertain because intellectual property rights have limitations, and may not adequately protect our business, or permit us to maintain our competitive advantage. The following examples are illustrative:

- others may be able to make compounds that are similar to our product candidates but that are not covered by the claims of the patents that we or our strategic partners own or have exclusively licensed;
- others may independently develop similar or alternative technologies without infringing our intellectual property rights;
- issued patents that we own or have exclusively licensed may not provide us with any competitive advantages, or may be held invalid or unenforceable, as a result of legal challenges by our competitors;
- we may obtain patents for certain compounds many years before we obtain marketing approval for products containing such compounds, and because patents have a limited life, which may begin to run prior to the commercial sale of the related product, the commercial value of our patents may be limited;
- our competitors might conduct research and development activities in countries where we do not have patent rights and then use the information learned from such activities to develop competitive products for sale in our major commercial markets;
- we may fail to develop additional proprietary technologies that are patentable;
- the laws of certain foreign countries may not protect our intellectual property rights to the same extent as the laws of the United States, or we may fail to apply for or obtain adequate intellectual property protection in all the jurisdictions in which we operate; and

[Table of Contents](#)

- the patents of others may have an adverse effect on our business, for example by preventing us from marketing one or more of our product candidates for one or more indications.

Any of the aforementioned threats to our competitive advantage could have a material adverse effect on our business.

We may become involved in lawsuits to protect or enforce our patents and trade secrets, which could be expensive, time consuming and unsuccessful.

Third parties may seek to market biosimilar versions of any approved products. Alternatively, third parties may seek approval to market their own products similar to or otherwise competitive with our product candidates. In these circumstances, we may need to defend or assert our patents, including by filing lawsuits alleging patent infringement. The outcome following legal assertions of invalidity and unenforceability is unpredictable. In any of these types of proceedings, a court or agency with jurisdiction may find our patents invalid or unenforceable. Even if we have valid and enforceable patents, these patents still may not provide protection against competing products or processes sufficient to achieve our business objectives.

Even after they have issued, our patents and any patents that we license may be challenged, narrowed, invalidated or circumvented. If our patents are invalidated or otherwise limited or will expire prior to the commercialization of our product candidates, other companies may be better able to develop products that compete with ours, which could adversely affect our competitive business position, business prospects and financial condition. In addition, if the breadth or strength of protection provided by our patents and patent applications is threatened, it could dissuade companies from collaborating with us to license, develop or commercialize current or future product candidates.

The following are examples of litigation and other adversarial proceedings or disputes that we could become a party to involving our patents or patents licensed to us:

- we or our strategic partners may initiate litigation or other proceedings against third parties to enforce our patent and trade secret rights;
- third parties may initiate litigation or other proceedings seeking to invalidate patents owned by or licensed to us or to obtain a declaratory judgment that their product or technology does not infringe our patents or patents licensed to us;
- third parties may initiate opposition or reexamination proceedings challenging the validity or scope of our patent rights, requiring us or our strategic partners and/or licensors to participate in such proceedings to defend the validity and scope of our patents;
- there may be a challenge or dispute regarding inventorship or ownership of patents or trade secrets currently identified as being owned by or licensed to us;
- the USPTO may initiate an interference between patents or patent applications owned by or licensed to us and those of our competitors, requiring us or our strategic partners and/or licensors to participate in an interference proceeding to determine the priority of invention, which could jeopardize our patent rights; or
- third parties may seek approval to market biosimilar versions of our future approved products prior to expiration of relevant patents owned by or licensed to us, requiring us to defend our patents, including by filing lawsuits alleging patent infringement.

These lawsuits and proceedings would be costly and could affect our results of operations and divert the attention of our managerial and scientific personnel. Adversaries in these proceedings may have the ability to dedicate substantially greater resources to prosecuting these legal actions than we or our licensors can. There is a risk that a court or administrative body would decide that our patents are invalid or not infringed or trade secrets not

misappropriated by a third party's activities, or that the scope of certain issued claims must be further limited. An adverse outcome in a litigation or proceeding involving our own patents or trade secrets could limit our ability to assert our patents or trade secrets against these or other competitors, affect our ability to receive royalties or other licensing consideration from our licensees, and may curtail or preclude our ability to exclude third parties from making, using and selling similar or competitive products. Any of these occurrences could adversely affect our competitive business position, business prospects and financial condition.

We may not be able to prevent, alone or with our licensors, infringement or misappropriation of our intellectual property rights, particularly in countries where the laws may not protect those rights as fully as in the United States. Any litigation or other proceedings to enforce our intellectual property rights may fail, and even if successful, may result in substantial costs and distract our management and other employees.

Furthermore, because of the substantial amount of discovery required in connection with intellectual property litigation, there is a risk that some of our confidential information could be compromised by disclosure during this type of litigation. There could also be public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments. If securities analysts or investors perceive these results to be negative, it could have an adverse effect on the price of our common shares.

The degree of future protection for our proprietary rights is uncertain because legal means afford only limited protection and may not adequately protect our rights or permit us to gain or keep our competitive advantage. For example:

- others may be able to develop a platform that is similar to, or better than, ours in a way that is not covered by the claims of our patents;
- others may be able to make compounds that are similar to our product candidates but that are not covered by the claims of our patents;
- we might not have been the first to make the inventions covered by patents or pending patent applications;
- we might not have been the first to file patent applications for these inventions;
- any patents that we obtain may not provide us with any competitive advantages or may ultimately be found invalid or unenforceable; or
- we may not develop additional proprietary technologies that are patentable or that afford meaningful trade secret protection.

Patent terms may be inadequate to protect our competitive position on our product candidates for an adequate amount of time.

Patents have a limited lifespan. In the United States, if all maintenance fees are timely paid, the natural expiration of a patent is generally 20 years from its earliest U.S. non-provisional filing date. Various extensions may be available, but the life of a patent, and the protection it affords, is limited. Even if patents covering our product candidates are obtained, once the patent life has expired, we may be open to competition from competitive products, including biosimilars. Given the amount of time required for the development, testing and regulatory review of new product candidates, patents protecting such candidates might expire before or shortly after such candidates are commercialized. As a result, our owned and licensed patent portfolio may not provide us with sufficient rights to exclude others from commercializing products similar or identical to ours.

If we do not obtain protection under the Hatch-Waxman amendments and similar foreign legislation for extending the term of patents covering each of our product candidates, our business may be materially harmed.

Depending upon the timing, duration and conditions of FDA marketing approval of our product candidates, one or more of our U.S. patents may be eligible for limited patent term extension under the Drug Price Competition

and Patent Term Restoration Act of 1984, referred to as the Hatch-Waxman Amendments. The Hatch-Waxman Amendments permit a patent term extension of up to five years for a patent covering an approved product as compensation for effective patent term lost during product development and the FDA regulatory review process. However, we may not receive an extension if we fail to apply within applicable deadlines, fail to apply prior to expiration of relevant patents or otherwise fail to satisfy applicable requirements. Moreover, the length of the extension could be less than we request. If we are unable to obtain patent term extension or the term of any such extension is less than we request, the period during which we can enforce our patent rights for that product will be shortened and our competitors may obtain approval to market competing products sooner. As a result, our revenue from applicable products could be reduced, possibly materially. Further, if this occurs, our competitors may take advantage of our investment in development and trials by referencing our clinical and preclinical data and launch their product earlier than might otherwise be the case.

If we are unable to protect the confidentiality of our proprietary information, the value of our technology and products could be adversely affected.

In addition to patent protection, we also rely on other proprietary rights, including protection of trade secrets, and other proprietary information. For example, we treat our proprietary computational technologies, including unpatented know-how and other proprietary information, as trade secrets. To maintain the confidentiality of trade secrets and proprietary information, we enter into confidentiality agreements with our employees, consultants, strategic partners and others upon the commencement of their relationships with us. These agreements require that all confidential information developed by the individual or made known to the individual by us during the course of the individual's relationship with us be kept confidential and not disclosed to third parties. Our agreements with employees and our personnel policies also provide that any inventions conceived by the individual in the course of rendering services to us shall be our exclusive property. However, we may not obtain these agreements in all circumstances, and individuals with whom we have these agreements may not comply with their terms. Thus, despite such agreement, such inventions may become assigned to third parties. In the event of unauthorized use or disclosure of our trade secrets or proprietary information, these agreements, even if obtained, may not provide meaningful protection, particularly for our trade secrets or other confidential information. To the extent that our employees, consultants or contractors use technology or know-how owned by third parties in their work for us, disputes may arise between us and those third parties as to the rights in related inventions. To the extent that an individual who is not obligated to assign rights in intellectual property to us is rightfully an inventor of intellectual property, we may need to obtain an assignment or a license to that intellectual property from that individual, or a third party or from that individual's assignee. Such assignment or license may not be available on commercially reasonable terms or at all.

Enforcing a claim that a party illegally disclosed or misappropriated a trade secret is difficult, expensive and time-consuming and the outcome is unpredictable. The disclosure of our trade secrets would impair our competitive position and may materially harm our business, financial condition and results of operations. Costly and time-consuming litigation could be necessary to enforce and determine the scope of our proprietary rights, and failure to maintain trade secret protection could adversely affect our competitive business position. In addition, if any of our trade secrets were to be lawfully obtained or independently developed by a competitor, we would have no right to prevent such third party, or those to whom they communicate such technology or information, from using that technology or information to compete with us. If any of our trade secrets were to be disclosed to or independently developed by a competitor, or if we otherwise lose protection for our trade secrets or proprietary know-how, the value of this information may be greatly reduced and our business and competitive position could be harmed. Adequate remedies may not exist in the event of unauthorized use or disclosure of our proprietary information.

As is common in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries, we employ individuals who were previously or concurrently employed at research institutions and/or other biotechnology or pharmaceutical companies, including our competitors or potential competitors. We may be subject to claims that these employees, or we, have inadvertently or otherwise used or disclosed trade secrets or other proprietary information of their former

employers, or that patents and applications we have filed to protect inventions of these employees, even those related to one or more of our product candidates, are rightfully owned by their former or concurrent employer. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these claims. Such trade secrets or other proprietary information could be awarded to a third party, and we could be required to obtain a license from such third party to commercialize our technology or products. Such license may not be available on commercially reasonable terms or at all. Even if we are successful in defending against these claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to management.

Obtaining and maintaining our patent protection depends on compliance with various procedural, documentary, fee payment and other requirements imposed by regulations and governmental patent agencies, and our patent protection could be reduced or eliminated for noncompliance with these requirements.

Periodic maintenance fees, renewal fees, annuity fees and various other governmental fees on patents or applications will be due to the USPTO and various foreign patent offices at various points over the lifetime of our patents or applications. We have systems in place to remind us to pay these fees, and we rely on our outside patent annuity service to pay these fees when due. Additionally, the USPTO and various foreign patent offices require compliance with a number of procedural, documentary, fee payment and other similar provisions during the patent application process. We employ reputable law firms and other professionals to help us comply, and in many cases an inadvertent lapse can be cured by payment of a late fee or by other means in accordance with rules applicable to the particular jurisdiction. However, there are situations in which noncompliance can result in abandonment or lapse of the patent or patent application, resulting in partial or complete loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. If such an event were to occur, it could have a material adverse effect on our business.

We may be subject to claims challenging the inventorship of our patents and other intellectual property.

Although we are not currently experiencing any claims challenging the inventorship or ownership of our patents, we may in the future be subject to claims that former employees, strategic partners or other third parties have an interest in our patents or other intellectual property as an inventor or co-inventor. While it is our policy to require our employees and contractors who may be involved in the conception or development of intellectual property to execute agreements assigning such intellectual property to us, we may be unsuccessful in executing such an agreement with each party who, in fact, conceives or develops intellectual property that we regard as our own. For example, the assignment of intellectual property rights may not be self-executing or the assignment agreements may be breached, or we may have inventorship disputes arise from conflicting obligations of consultants or others who are involved in developing our product candidates. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these and other claims challenging inventorship. If we fail in defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights, such as exclusive ownership of, or right to use, valuable intellectual property. Even if we are successful in defending against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to management and other employees.

Patent protection and patent prosecution for some of our product candidates may be dependent on, and the ability to assert patents and defend them against claims of invalidity may be maintained by, third parties.

There may be times in the future when certain patents that relate to our product candidates or any approved products are controlled by our licensees or licensors. Although we may, under such arrangements, have rights to consult with our strategic partners on actions taken as well as back-up rights of prosecution and enforcement, we have in the past and may in the future relinquish rights to prosecute and maintain patents and patent applications within our portfolio as well as the ability to assert such patents against infringers.

If any current or future licensee or licensor with rights to prosecute, assert or defend patents related to our product candidates fails to appropriately prosecute and maintain patent protection for patents covering any of our product candidates, or if patents covering any of our product candidates are asserted against infringers or defended against claims of invalidity or unenforceability in a manner which adversely affects such coverage, our

ability to develop and commercialize any such product candidate may be adversely affected and we may not be able to prevent competitors from making, using and selling competing products.

Changes in patent laws or patent jurisprudence could diminish the value of patents in general, thereby impairing our ability to protect our products.

The patent positions of pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies can be highly uncertain and involve complex legal and factual questions for which important legal principles remain unresolved. Changes in either the patent laws or in the interpretations of patent laws in the United States and other countries may diminish the value of our intellectual property. We cannot predict the breadth of claims that may be allowed or found to be enforceable in our patents, in our strategic partners' patents or in third-party patents. The United States has enacted and is currently implementing wide-ranging patent reform legislation. Further, recent U.S. Supreme Court rulings have either narrowed the scope of patent protection available in certain circumstances or weakened the rights of patent owners in certain situations. In addition to increasing uncertainty with regard to our ability to obtain patents in the future, this combination of events has created uncertainty with respect to the validity, scope and value of patents, once obtained.

For our U.S. patent applications containing a priority claim after March 16, 2013, there is a greater level of uncertainty in the patent law. In September 2011, the Leahy-Smith America Invents Act, also known as the America Invents Act ("AIA") was signed into law. The AIA includes a number of significant changes to U.S. patent law, including provisions that affect the way patent applications will be prosecuted and may also affect patent litigation.

The AIA and its implementation could increase the uncertainties and costs surrounding the prosecution of our patent applications and the enforcement or defense of our issued patents, all of which could have an adverse effect on our business. An important change introduced by the AIA is that, as of March 16, 2013, the United States transitioned to a "first-to-file" system for deciding which party should be granted a patent when two or more patent applications are filed by different parties disclosing or claiming the same invention. A third party that has filed, or does file a patent application in the USPTO after March 16, 2013 but before us, could be awarded a patent covering a given invention, even if we had made the invention before it was made by the third party. This requires us to be cognizant going forward of the time from invention to filing of a patent application.

Among some of the other changes introduced by the AIA are changes that limit where a patentee may file a patent infringement suit and providing opportunities for third parties to challenge any issued patent in the USPTO. This applies to all of our U.S. patents, even those issued before March 16, 2013. Because of a lower evidentiary standard in USPTO proceedings compared to the evidentiary standard in United States federal court necessary to invalidate a patent claim, a third party could potentially provide evidence in a USPTO proceeding sufficient for the USPTO to hold a claim invalid even though the same evidence would be insufficient to invalidate the claim if first presented in a district court action. Accordingly, a third party may attempt to use the USPTO procedures to invalidate our patent claims that would not have been invalidated if first challenged by the third party as a defendant in a district court action.

Depending on decisions by the U.S. Congress, the U.S. federal courts, the USPTO or similar authorities in foreign jurisdictions, the laws and regulations governing patents could change in unpredictable ways that may weaken our and our licensors' ability to obtain new patents or to enforce existing patents we and our licensors or partners may obtain in the future.

We may not be able to protect our intellectual property rights throughout the world.

Filing, prosecuting and defending patents on product candidates in all countries throughout the world would be prohibitively expensive, and our intellectual property rights in some countries outside the United States can be less extensive than those in the United States. In addition, the laws of some foreign countries do not protect

intellectual property rights to the same extent as federal and state laws in the United States. Consequently, we may not be able to prevent third parties from practicing our inventions in all countries outside the United States, or from selling or importing products made using our inventions in and into the United States or other jurisdictions. Competitors may use our technologies in jurisdictions where we have not obtained patent protection to develop their own products and further, may export otherwise infringing products to territories where we have patent protection, but enforcement is not as strong as that in the United States. These products may compete with our current or future products, if any, and our patents or other intellectual property rights may not be effective or sufficient to prevent them from competing. Recent United States Supreme Court cases have narrowed the scope of what is considered patentable subject matter, for example, in the areas of software and diagnostic methods involving the association between treatment outcome and biomarkers. This could impact our ability to patent certain aspects of our technology in the United States.

Many companies have encountered significant problems in protecting and defending intellectual property rights in foreign jurisdictions. The legal systems of certain countries, particularly certain developing countries, do not favor the enforcement of patents, trade secrets and other intellectual property protection, particularly those relating to biotechnology products, which could make it difficult for us to stop the infringement of our patents or marketing of competing products in violation of our proprietary rights generally. Proceedings to enforce our patent rights in foreign jurisdictions could result in substantial costs and divert our efforts and attention from other aspects of our business, could put our patents at risk of being invalidated or interpreted narrowly and our patent applications at risk of not issuing and could provoke third parties to assert claims against us. We may not prevail in any lawsuits that we initiate and the damages or other remedies awarded, if any, may not be commercially meaningful. Accordingly, our efforts to enforce our intellectual property rights around the world may be inadequate to obtain a significant commercial advantage from the intellectual property that we develop or license.

Additionally, the requirements for patentability may differ in certain countries, particularly developing countries. For example, unlike other countries, China has a heightened requirement for patentability, and specifically requires a detailed description of medical uses of a claimed drug. In India, unlike the United States, there is no link between regulatory approval of a drug and its patent status. In addition to India, certain countries in Europe and developing countries, including China, have compulsory licensing laws under which a patent owner may be compelled to grant licenses to third parties. In those countries, we and our licensors may have limited remedies if patents are infringed or if we or our licensors are compelled to grant a license to a third party, which could materially diminish the value of those patents. This could limit our potential revenue opportunities. Accordingly, our efforts to enforce intellectual property rights around the world may be inadequate to obtain a significant commercial advantage from the intellectual property that we own or license.

We will need to obtain FDA approval for any proposed product candidate names, and any failure or delay associated with such approval may adversely affect our business.

Any proprietary name or trademark we intend to use for our product candidates will require approval from the FDA regardless of whether we have secured a formal trademark registration from the USPTO. The FDA typically conducts a review of proposed product candidate names, including an evaluation of the potential for confusion with other product names. The FDA may also object to a product name if it believes the name inappropriately implies certain medical claims or contributes to an overstatement of efficacy. If the FDA objects to any product candidate names we propose, we may be required to adopt an alternative name for our product candidates. If we adopt an alternative name, we would lose the benefit of any existing trademark applications for such product candidate and may be required to expend significant additional resources in an effort to identify a suitable product name that would qualify under applicable trademark laws, not infringe the existing rights of third parties and be acceptable to the FDA. We may be unable to build a successful brand identity for a new trademark in a timely manner or at all, which would limit our ability to commercialize our product candidates.

Risks Related to Additional Legal and Compliance Matters

Our employees may engage in misconduct or other improper activities, including noncompliance with regulatory standards and requirements and insider trading.

We are exposed to the risk of employee fraud or other misconduct. Misconduct by employees could include intentional failures to comply with FDA regulations, to provide accurate information to the FDA, to comply with federal and state health care fraud and abuse laws and regulations, to report financial information or data accurately or to disclose unauthorized activities to us. In particular, sales, marketing and business arrangements in the health care industry are subject to extensive laws and regulations intended to prevent fraud, misconduct, kickbacks, self-dealing and other abusive practices. These laws and regulations may restrict or prohibit a wide range of pricing, discounting, marketing and promotion, sales commission, customer incentive programs and other business arrangements. Employee misconduct could also involve the improper use of information obtained in the course of clinical trials, which could result in regulatory sanctions and serious harm to our reputation. We have adopted a Code of Conduct and Business Ethics (“Code of Conduct”) but it is not always possible to identify and deter employee misconduct, and the precautions we take to detect and prevent this activity may not be effective in controlling unknown or unmanaged risks or losses or in protecting us from governmental investigations or other actions or lawsuits stemming from a failure to comply with these laws or regulations. If any such actions are instituted against us, and we are not successful in defending ourselves or asserting our rights, those actions could have a significant impact on our business, including the imposition of significant fines or other sanctions.

If we market products in a manner that violates healthcare fraud and abuse laws, or if we violate government price reporting laws, we may be subject to civil or criminal penalties.

In addition to FDA restrictions on the marketing of pharmaceutical products, federal and state healthcare laws restrict certain business practices in the biopharmaceutical industry. Although we currently do not have any products on the market, we may be subject, and once our product candidates are approved and we begin commercialization will be subject, to additional healthcare laws and regulations enforced by the federal government and by authorities in the states and foreign jurisdictions in which we conduct our business. These state and federal healthcare laws, commonly referred to as “fraud and abuse” laws, have been applied in recent years to restrict certain marketing practices in the pharmaceutical industry, and include, but are not limited to, anti-kickback, false claims, data privacy and security and transparency statutes and regulations.

Federal false claims laws prohibit any person from knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, a false claim for payment to the federal government or knowingly making, or causing to be made, a false statement to get a false claim paid. The federal healthcare program anti-kickback statute prohibits, among other things, knowingly and willfully offering, paying, soliciting or receiving remuneration to induce, or in return for, purchasing, leasing, ordering or arranging for the purchase, lease or order of any healthcare item or service reimbursable under Medicare, Medicaid or other federally financed healthcare programs. This statute has been interpreted to apply to arrangements between pharmaceutical manufacturers on the one hand and prescribers, purchasers and formulary managers on the other. Although there are several statutory exemptions and regulatory safe harbors protecting certain common activities from prosecution, the exemptions and safe harbors are drawn narrowly, and practices that involve remuneration intended to induce prescribing, purchasing or recommending may be subject to scrutiny if they do not qualify for an exemption or safe harbor. Most states also have statutes or regulations similar to the federal anti-kickback law and federal false claims laws, which may apply to items such as pharmaceutical products and services reimbursed by private insurers. Administrative, civil and criminal sanctions may be imposed under these federal and state laws.

Over the past few years, a number of pharmaceutical and other healthcare companies have been prosecuted under these laws for a variety of promotional and marketing activities, such as:

- providing free trips, free goods, sham consulting fees and grants and other monetary benefits to prescribers;

[Table of Contents](#)

- reporting to pricing services inflated average wholesale prices that were then used by federal programs to set reimbursement rates;
- engaging in off-label promotion; and
- submitting inflated best price information to the Medicaid Rebate Program to reduce liability for Medicaid rebates.

The civil monetary penalties statute imposes penalties against any person or entity who, among other things, is determined to have presented or caused to be presented a claim to a federal health program that the person knows or should know is for an item or service that was not provided as claimed or is false or fraudulent.

HIPAA created new federal criminal statutes that prohibit knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud or obtain, by means of false or fraudulent pretenses, representations, or promises, any of the money or property owned by, or under the custody or control of, any healthcare benefit program, including private third-party payors, and knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up a material fact or making any materially false, fictitious or fraudulent statement in connection with the delivery of, or payment for, healthcare benefits, items or services.

In addition, we may be subject to data privacy and security regulation by both the federal government and the states in which we conduct our business. HIPAA, as amended by HITECH, and its implementing regulations, imposes certain requirements relating to the privacy, security and transmission of individually identifiable health information. Among other things, HITECH makes HIPAA's security standards directly applicable to business associates—independent contractors or agents of covered entities that receive or obtain protected health information in connection with providing a service on behalf of a covered entity. HITECH also created four new tiers of civil monetary penalties, and newly empowered state attorneys general with the authority to enforce HIPAA. In January 2013, the Office for Civil Rights of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services issued the Final Omnibus Rule under HIPAA pursuant to HITECH that makes significant changes to the privacy, security and breach notification requirements and penalties. The Final Omnibus Rule generally took effect in September 2013 and enhances certain privacy and security protections, and strengthens the government's ability to enforce HIPAA. The Final Omnibus Rule also enhanced requirements for both covered entities and business associates regarding notification of breaches of unsecured protected health information. In addition, state laws govern the privacy and security of health information in certain circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways. These state laws may not have the same effect and often are not pre-empted by HIPAA, thus complicating compliance efforts.

Additionally, the PPACA also included the federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act, which requires certain manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologicals and medical supplies for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid or the Children's Health Insurance Program (with certain exceptions) to report annually information related to certain payments or other transfers of value made or distributed to physicians and teaching hospitals, or to entities or individuals at the request of, or designated on behalf of, the physicians and teaching hospitals and to report annually certain ownership and investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members. Failure to comply with required reporting requirements could subject applicable manufacturers and others to substantial civil money penalties.

Also, many states have similar healthcare statutes or regulations that apply to items and services reimbursed under Medicaid and other state programs, or, in several states, apply regardless of the payor. Certain states require pharmaceutical companies to implement a comprehensive compliance program that includes a limit or outright ban on expenditures for, or payments to, individual medical or health professionals and/or require pharmaceutical companies to track and report gifts and other payments made to physicians and other healthcare providers.

If our operations are found to be in violation of any of the healthcare laws or regulations described above or any other laws that apply to us, we may be subject to penalties, including potentially significant criminal, civil or

administrative penalties, damages, fines, disgorgement, individual imprisonment, exclusion of products from reimbursement under government programs, contractual damages, reputational harm, administrative burdens, diminished profits and future earnings or the curtailment or restructuring of our operations, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our results of operations. To the extent that any of our products will be sold in a foreign country, we may be subject to similar foreign laws and regulations, which may include, for instance, applicable post-marketing requirements, including safety surveillance, fraud and abuse laws, and implementation of corporate compliance programs and reporting of payments or transfers of value to healthcare professionals.

If we do not comply with laws regulating the protection of the environment and health and human safety, our business could be adversely affected.

Our research and development involves, and may in the future involve, the use of potentially hazardous materials and chemicals. Our operations may produce hazardous waste products. Although we believe that our safety procedures for handling and disposing of these materials comply with the standards mandated by local, state and federal laws and regulations, the risk of accidental contamination or injury from these materials cannot be eliminated. If an accident occurs, we could be held liable for resulting damages, which could be substantial. We are also subject to numerous environmental, health and workplace safety laws and regulations and fire and building codes, including those governing laboratory procedures, exposure to blood-borne pathogens, use and storage of flammable agents and the handling of biohazardous materials. Although we maintain workers' compensation insurance as prescribed by the Washington State and the Province of British Columbia to cover us for costs and expenses we may incur due to injuries to our employees resulting from the use of these materials, this insurance may not provide adequate coverage against potential liabilities. We do not maintain insurance for environmental liability or toxic tort claims that may be asserted against us. Additional federal, state and local laws and regulations affecting our operations may be adopted in the future. We may incur substantial costs to comply with, and substantial fines or penalties if we violate, any of these laws or regulations.

We expect to change from foreign private issuer to U.S. domestic issuer status in the future, which may result in additional costs and expenses to us.

We are currently a "foreign private issuer," as such term is defined in Rule 405 under the U.S. Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), and are not subject to the same requirements that are imposed upon U.S. domestic issuers by the SEC. While we have voluntarily chosen to file periodic reports on U.S. domestic issuer forms, such as our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, we will maintain our status as a foreign private issuer and are not subject to certain other requirements imposed on U.S. domestic issuers. However, we will no longer be a foreign private issuer if a majority of our common shares are held in the United States and (i) a majority of our directors or executive officers are U.S. citizens or residents; (ii) a majority of our assets are located in the United States; or (iii) our business is administered principally in the United States. As of December 31, 2017, the majority of our common shares are held in the United States. Moreover, the majority of our directors are U.S. citizens. Accordingly, with the expectation that we may no longer be considered a foreign private issuer as of the next determination date, we have voluntarily chosen to file periodic reports on U.S. domestic issuer forms, beginning with our 2017 Annual Report on Form 10-K. The next determination date with respect to our foreign private issuer status is June 30, 2018. If, as we expect, we no longer qualify as a foreign private issuer on that determination date, as of January 1, 2019 we will no longer be eligible to use the rules and forms designated for foreign private issuers and we will be considered a U.S. domestic issuer. The regulatory and compliance costs to us under U.S. securities laws as a U.S. domestic issuer may be significantly more than the costs incurred as a foreign private issuer. If we are not a foreign private issuer, we will be required to file periodic and current reports and registration statements on U.S. domestic issuer forms with the SEC, which are generally more detailed and extensive than the forms available to a foreign private issuer. In addition, we will no longer be eligible to rely upon exemptions from corporate governance requirements that are available to foreign private issuers or to benefit from other accommodations for foreign private issuers under the rules of the SEC or NYSE.

Risks Related to Employee Matters and Managing Growth

Our future success depends on our ability to retain key executives and to attract, retain and motivate qualified personnel.

We are highly dependent on the research and development, clinical and business expertise of Dr. Ali Tehrani, Ph.D., our President and Chief Executive Officer, Mr. Neil Klompas, our Chief Financial Officer, and other members of our senior management, scientific and clinical team. Although we have entered into employment agreements with our executive officers, each of them may terminate their employment with us at any time. We currently maintain “key person” insurance coverage for Dr. Tehrani (C\$5.0 million) and Mr. Neil Klompas (C\$2.0 million). The loss of the services of our executive officers or other key employees could impede the achievement of our research, development and commercialization objectives and seriously harm our ability to successfully implement our business strategy.

Recruiting and retaining qualified scientific, clinical, manufacturing and sales and marketing personnel will also be critical to our success. In addition, we will need to expand and effectively manage our managerial, operational, financial, development and other resources in order to successfully pursue our research, development and commercialization efforts for our existing and future product candidates. Furthermore, replacing executive officers and key employees may be difficult and may take an extended period of time because of the limited talent pool in our industry due to the breadth of skills and experience required to successfully develop, gain regulatory approval of and commercialize products. Intense competition for attracting key skill-sets may limit our ability to retain and motivate these key personnel on acceptable terms. We also experience competition for the hiring of scientific and clinical personnel from universities and research institutions. In addition, we rely on consultants and advisors, including scientific and clinical advisors, to assist us in formulating our research and development and commercialization strategy. Our consultants and advisors may be employed by employers other than us and may have commitments under consulting or advisory contracts with other entities that may limit their availability. If we are unable to continue to attract and retain high quality personnel, our ability to pursue our growth strategy will be limited.

We will need to grow our organization, and we may experience difficulty in managing this growth, which could disrupt our operations.

As of March 31, 2018 we had 154 full-time employees. As our development and commercialization plans and strategies develop, we expect to expand our employee base for managerial, operational, financial and other resources. Additionally, as our product candidates enter and advance through preclinical studies and any clinical trials, we will need to expand our development, manufacturing, regulatory sales and marketing capabilities or contract with other organizations to provide these capabilities for us. Future growth would impose significant added responsibilities on members of management, including the need to identify, recruit, maintain, motivate and integrate additional employees. Also, our management may need to divert a disproportionate amount of their attention away from our day-to-day activities and devote a substantial amount of time to managing these growth activities. We may not be able to effectively manage the expansion of our operations, which may result in weaknesses in our infrastructure, give rise to operational errors, loss of business opportunities, loss of employees and reduced productivity amongst remaining employees. Our expected growth could require significant capital expenditures and may divert financial resources from other projects, such as the development of existing and additional product candidates. If our management is unable to effectively manage our expected growth, our expenses may increase more than expected, our ability to generate or grow revenue could be reduced and we may not be able to implement our business strategy. Our future financial performance and our ability to commercialize our product candidates and compete effectively with others in our industry will depend on our ability to effectively manage any future growth.

Risks Related to Our Common Shares

Our share price is likely to be volatile and the market price of our common shares may drop below the price paid by shareholders.

Investors should consider an investment in our common shares as risky and invest only if they can withstand a significant loss and wide fluctuations in the market value of their investment. In addition, the stock market has recently experienced significant volatility, particularly with respect to pharmaceutical, biotechnology and other life sciences company stocks. The volatility of pharmaceutical, biotechnology and other life sciences company stocks often does not relate to the operating performance of the companies represented by the stock. Some of the factors that may cause the market price of our common shares to fluctuate or decrease include:

- results and timing of our clinical trials and clinical trials of our competitors' products;
- failure or discontinuation of any of our development programs;
- issues in manufacturing our product candidates or future approved products;
- regulatory developments or enforcement in the United States and foreign countries with respect to our product candidates or our competitors' products;
- competition from existing products or new products that may emerge;
- developments or disputes concerning patents or other proprietary rights;
- introduction of technological innovations or new commercial products by us or our competitors;
- announcements by us, our strategic partners or our competitors of significant acquisitions, strategic partnerships, joint ventures, or capital commitments;
- changes in estimates or recommendations by securities analysts that cover our common shares;
- fluctuations in the valuation of companies perceived by investors to be comparable to us;
- public concern over our product candidates or any future approved products;
- litigation;
- future sales of our common shares;
- share price and volume fluctuations attributable to inconsistent trading volume levels of our shares;
- additions or departures of key personnel;
- changes in the structure of health care payment systems in the United States or overseas;
- failure of any of our product candidates, if approved, to achieve commercial success;
- economic and other external factors or other disasters or crises;
- period-to-period fluctuations in our financial condition and results of operations, including the timing of receipt of any milestone or other payments under commercialization or licensing agreements;
- general market conditions and market conditions for biopharmaceutical stocks;
- overall fluctuations in U.S. equity markets; and
- other factors that may be unanticipated or out of our control.

In addition, in the past, when the market price of a stock has been volatile, holders of that stock have instituted securities class action litigation against the company that issued the stock. If any of our shareholders brought a lawsuit against us, we could incur substantial costs defending the lawsuit and divert the time and attention of our management, which could seriously harm our business.

An active trading market for our common shares may not be sustained.

An active trading market for our shares may not be sustained. If an active market for our common shares does not continue, it may be difficult for our shareholders to sell their shares without depressing the market price for the shares or sell their shares at or above the prices at which they acquired their shares or sell their shares at the time they would like to sell. Any inactive trading market for our common shares may also impair our ability to raise capital to continue to fund our operations by selling shares and may impair our ability to acquire other companies or technologies by using our shares as consideration.

Substantial future sales of our common shares, or the perception that these sales could occur, may cause the price of our common shares to drop significantly, even if our business is performing well.

A large volume of sales of our common shares could decrease the prevailing market price of our common shares and could impair our ability to raise additional capital through the sale of equity securities in the future. Even if a substantial number of sales of our common shares does not occur, the mere perception of the possibility of these sales could depress the market price of our common shares and have a negative effect on our ability to raise capital in the future.

We incur significant costs as a result of operating as a public company, and our management is required to devote substantial time to corporate governance standards.

As a public company, we incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses. In addition, our administrative staff are required to perform additional tasks not required for a private company. For example, as a public company, we have adopted additional internal controls and disclosure controls and procedures, retained a transfer agent and adopted an insider trading policy. As a public company, we bear all of the internal and external costs of preparing and distributing periodic public reports in compliance with our obligations under the securities laws. We expect these costs to increase in 2018 as we transition from filing periodic and current reports and registration statements, as applicable, with the SEC on forms available to foreign private issuers to those required to be filed by domestic issuers and to otherwise prepare for the anticipated change from a foreign private issuer to a U.S. domestic issuer.

In addition, regulations and standards relating to corporate governance and public disclosure, including the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and the related rules and regulations implemented by the SEC, the applicable Canadian securities regulators, the NYSE and the TSX, have legal and financial compliance costs and make some compliance activities time consuming. We intend to invest resources to comply with evolving laws, regulations and standards, and such investment will result in increased general and administrative expenses and may divert management's time and attention from our other business activities. If our efforts to comply with new laws, regulations and standards differ from the activities intended by regulatory or governing bodies due to ambiguities related to practice, regulatory authorities may initiate legal proceedings against us and our business may be harmed. Additionally, as a public company, we maintain our directors' and officers' liability insurance coverage, which results in higher insurance costs. In the future, it may be more expensive or more difficult for us to obtain director and officer liability insurance, and we may be required to accept reduced coverage or incur substantially higher costs to obtain coverage. These factors could also make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified members of our board of directors, particularly to serve on our audit committee and compensation committee, and qualified executive officers.

Under the corporate governance standards of the NYSE, a majority of our board of directors and each member of our audit committee must be an independent director no later than the first anniversary of the completion of our IPO. The policies of the TSX require our board of directors to consist of at least two independent directors and Canadian securities laws require each member of the audit committee to be independent within the meaning of Canadian securities laws. As of the date of our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, we meet these requirements but we may in the future encounter difficulty in attracting and retaining qualified persons to serve

on our board of directors and the audit committee, and our board of directors and management may be required to divert significant time and attention and resources away from our business to identify qualified directors. If we fail to attract and retain the required number of independent directors, we may be subject to the delisting of our common shares from the NYSE and TSX.

As a foreign private issuer, we are subject to different U.S. securities laws and rules than a U.S. domestic issuer, in particular, certain disclosure requirements, which could limit the information publicly available to our shareholders.

As a foreign private issuer, we are currently not required to comply with all of the periodic disclosure and current reporting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”) that apply to U.S. domestic issuers and, as such, there may be less publicly available information about us than if we were a U.S. domestic issuer. Furthermore, our officers, directors and principal shareholders are currently exempt from the insider reporting and short-swing profit recovery requirements in Section 16 of the Exchange Act. Accordingly, our shareholders may not know on as timely a basis when our officers, directors and principal shareholders purchase or sell their common shares, as the reporting deadlines under the corresponding Canadian insider reporting requirements are longer. As a foreign private issuer, we are also exempt from the requirements of Regulation FD (Fair Disclosure) which, generally, are meant to ensure that select groups of investors are not privy to specific information about an issuer before other investors. As a result of such varied reporting obligations, shareholders should not expect to receive the same information at the same time as information provided by U.S. domestic issuers.

In addition, as a foreign private issuer, we have the option to follow certain Canadian corporate governance practices rather than those of the United States, except to the extent that such laws would be contrary to U.S. securities laws, provided that we disclose the requirements we are not following and describe the Canadian practices we follow instead. As a result, our shareholders may not have the same protections afforded to shareholders of companies that are subject to all domestic U.S. corporate governance requirements. As described in our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, we expect to no longer qualify as a foreign private issuer as of our next determination date of June 30, 2018, such that as of January 1, 2019, we will be considered a U.S. domestic issuer.

We are an emerging growth company, and any decision on our part to comply only with certain reduced reporting and disclosure requirements applicable to emerging growth companies could make our common shares less attractive to investors.

We are an “emerging growth company,” as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act (“JOBS Act”). For as long as we continue to be an emerging growth company, we may choose to take advantage of exemptions from various reporting requirements applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies, including, but not limited to, not being required to have our independent registered public accounting firm audit our internal control over financial reporting under Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and shareholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We could be an emerging growth company for up to five years following the completion of our IPO on May 3, 2017, although, if we have more than \$1.07 billion in annual revenue, if the market value of our common shares held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of June 30 of any year, or we issue more than \$1.0 billion of non-convertible debt over a three-year period before the end of that five-year period, we would cease to be an emerging growth company as of the following December 31. Investors could find our common shares less attractive if we choose to rely on these exemptions. If some investors find our common shares less attractive as a result of any choices to reduce future disclosure, there may be a less active trading market for our common shares and our share price may be more volatile.

If we fail to maintain an effective system of internal control over financial reporting, we may not be able to accurately report our financial results or prevent fraud. As a result, shareholders could lose confidence in our financial and other public reporting, which would harm our business and the trading price of our common shares.

Effective internal control over financial reporting is necessary for us to provide reliable financial reports and, together with adequate disclosure controls and procedures, are designed to prevent fraud. Any failure to implement required new or improved controls, or difficulties encountered in their implementation, could cause us to fail to meet our reporting obligations.

Pursuant to Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act (“Section 404”) and related rules adopted by the SEC and the U.S. Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, (“PCAOB”) and National Instrument 52-109 – Certification of Disclosure in Issuers’ Annual and Interim Filings (“NI 52-109”) our management is required to disclose changes made in our internal control over financial reporting on a quarterly basis and assess the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures annually. We have elected to take advantage of certain exceptions from reporting requirements that are available to emerging growth companies under the JOBS Act and therefore we are not required to deliver an auditor’s attestation report on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting pursuant to Section 404 until after the date we are no longer an emerging growth company. We could be an emerging growth company for up to five years from our IPO, although circumstances could cause us to lose that status earlier, including if the market value of our shares held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of any June 30 before that time, in which case we would no longer be an emerging growth company as of the following December 31. An independent assessment of the effectiveness of our internal control could detect problems that our management’s assessment might not. Undetected material weaknesses in our internal controls could lead to financial statement restatements and require us to incur the expense of remediation. Inferior internal controls could also cause investors to lose confidence in our reported financial information, which could have a negative effect on the trading price of our common shares.

Our management and independent registered public accounting firm did not perform an evaluation of the design and operating effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting in accordance with the provisions of Section 404 and NI 52-109 as of December 31, 2015 and December 31, 2016. Had we and our independent registered public accounting firm performed such an evaluation, control deficiencies may have been identified by management or our independent registered public accounting firm, and those control deficiencies could have also represented one or more material weaknesses. Undetected material weaknesses in our internal controls could lead to financial statement restatements and require us to incur the expense of remediation.

As of December 31, 2017, our management did perform an evaluation of the design and operating effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting based on the Internal Control-Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (“2013 COSO Framework”) in accordance with the provisions of NI 52-109. However, no independent assessment of the design and operating effectiveness of our internal controls was performed by our independent registered public accounting firm as of December 31, 2017 pursuant to certain exceptions under the JOBS Act, as described above. Had our independent registered public accounting firm performed such an evaluation, control deficiencies may have been identified by our independent registered public accounting firm and those control deficiencies could have also represented one or more material weaknesses. Undetected material weaknesses in our internal controls could lead to financial statement restatements and require us to incur the expense of remediation.

We are at risk of securities class action litigation.

In the past, securities class action litigation has often been brought against a company following a decline in the market price of its securities. This risk is especially relevant for us because biotechnology companies have experienced significant stock price volatility in recent years and our stock price declined following our IPO. If we face such litigation, it could result in substantial costs and a diversion of management’s attention and resources, which could materially harm our business.

We do not anticipate paying cash dividends, and accordingly, shareholders must rely on share appreciation for any return on their investment.

We have never paid any dividends on our common shares. We currently intend to retain our future earnings, if any, to fund the development and growth of our business and do not anticipate that we will declare or pay any cash dividends on our common shares in the foreseeable future. As a result, capital appreciation, if any, of our common shares will be the sole source of gain on investment in our common shares for the foreseeable future. Investors seeking cash dividends should not invest in our common shares.

The NYSE or TSX may delist our securities from its exchange, which could limit investors' ability to make transactions in our securities and subject us to additional trading restrictions.

Our securities may fail to meet the continued listing requirements to be listed on the NYSE or TSX. If the NYSE or TSX delists our common shares from trading on its exchange, we could face significant material adverse consequences, including:

- a limited availability of market quotations for our securities;
- a determination that our common shares is a "penny stock" which will require brokers trading in our common shares to adhere to more stringent rules and possibly result in a reduced level of trading activity in the secondary trading market for our common shares;
- a limited amount of news and analyst coverage for our company; and
- a decreased ability to issue additional securities or obtain additional financing in the future.

We are governed by the corporate laws of Canada which in some cases have a different effect on shareholders than the corporate laws of the United States.

We are governed by the BCBCA and other relevant laws, which may affect the rights of shareholders differently than those of a company governed by the laws of a U.S. jurisdiction, and may, together with our charter documents, have the effect of delaying, deferring or discouraging another party from acquiring control of our company by means of a tender offer, a proxy contest or otherwise, or may affect the price an acquiring party would be willing to offer in such an instance. The material differences between the BCBCA and Delaware General Corporation Law ("DGCL") that may have the greatest such effect include, but are not limited to, the following: (i) for certain corporate transactions (such as mergers and amalgamations or amendments to our articles) the BCBCA generally requires the voting threshold to be a special resolution approved by 66 2/3% of shareholders, or as set out in the articles, as applicable, whereas DGCL generally only requires a majority vote; and (ii) under the BCBCA a holder of 5% or more of our common shares can requisition a special meeting of shareholders, whereas such right does not exist under the DGCL. We cannot predict whether investors will find our company and our common shares less attractive because we are governed by foreign laws.

U.S. civil liabilities may not be enforceable against us, our directors, our officers or certain experts named in this prospectus.

We are governed by the BCBCA and our principal place of business is in Canada. Many of our directors and officers, as well as certain experts named herein, reside outside of the United States, and all or a substantial portion of their assets as well as all or a substantial portion of our assets are located outside the United States. As a result, it may be difficult for investors to effect service of process within the United States upon us and such directors, officers and experts or to enforce judgments obtained against us or such persons, in U.S. courts, in any action, including actions predicated upon the civil liability provisions of U.S. federal securities laws or any other laws of the United States. Additionally, rights predicated solely upon civil liability provisions of U.S. federal securities laws or any other laws of the United States may not be enforceable in original actions, or actions to enforce judgments obtained in U.S. courts, brought in Canadian courts, including courts in the Province of

[Table of Contents](#)

British Columbia. Furthermore, provisions in our articles provide that, unless we consent in writing to the selection of an alternative forum, the Supreme Court of British Columbia and the appellate courts therefrom, to the fullest extent permitted by law, will be the sole and exclusive forum for certain actions or proceedings brought against us, our directors and/or our officers. These provisions may limit our shareholders' ability to bring a claim against us in a judicial forum that our shareholders consider favorable or convenient for such disputes and may discourage lawsuits with respect to such claims.

If securities or industry analysts do not publish research or publish inaccurate or unfavorable research about our business, our share price and trading volume could decline.

The trading market for our common shares will depend on the research and reports that securities or industry analysts publish about us or our business. We do not have any control over these analysts. We cannot assure that analysts will cover us or provide accurate or favorable coverage. If one or more of the analysts who cover us downgrade our stock or change their opinion of our common shares negatively, our share price would likely decline. If one or more of these analysts cease coverage of our company or fail to regularly publish reports on us, we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which could cause our share price or trading volume to decline. Moreover, the research and reports that analysts publish may suggest a price for our common shares that does not fully or accurately reflect the true value of our company. Furthermore, even if such analyst publications are favorable, these reports could have negative consequences for us.

U.S. holders of our company's common shares may suffer adverse tax consequences if we are characterized as a passive foreign investment company.

We believe that we were not classified as a passive foreign investment company ("PFIC") for the taxable year ending December 31, 2017. However, the determination as to whether we are a PFIC for any taxable year is based on the application of complex U.S. federal income tax rules that are subject to differing interpretations. If we are a PFIC for any taxable year during which a U.S. Holder (as defined under Item 5 in our Annual Report on Form 10-K, "Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Shareholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities – Certain United States Income Tax Considerations For United States Holders") holds the common shares, it would likely result in adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences for such U.S. Holder. U.S. Holders should carefully read Item 5 in our Annual Report on Form 10-K, "Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Shareholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities – Certain United States Income Tax Considerations For United States Holders" for more information and consult their own tax advisors regarding the likelihood and consequences if we are treated as a PFIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes, including the advisability of making a "qualified electing fund" election (including a protective election), which may mitigate certain possible adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences but may result in an inclusion in gross income without receipt of such income.

Insiders have substantial control over us which could delay or prevent a change in corporate control or result in the entrenchment of management or the board of directors.

Our directors, named executive officers and principal shareholders, together with their affiliates and related persons, beneficially own, in the aggregate, approximately 51.3% of our outstanding common shares as of April 20, 2018. As a result, these shareholders, if acting together, may have the ability to determine the outcome of matters submitted to our shareholders for approval, including the election and removal of directors and any merger, or sale of all or substantially all of our assets. In addition, these persons, acting together, may have the ability to control the management and affairs of our company. Accordingly, this concentration of ownership may harm the market price of our common shares by:

- delaying, deferring, or preventing a change in control;
- entrenching our management or the board of directors;
- impeding a merger, takeover, or other business combination involving us; or

[Table of Contents](#)

- discouraging a potential acquirer from making a tender offer or otherwise attempting to obtain control of us.

Provisions in our corporate charter documents and Canadian law could make an acquisition of us, which may be beneficial to our shareholders, more difficult and may prevent attempts by our shareholders to replace or remove our current management and/or limit the market price of our common shares.

Provisions in our notice of articles and articles, as well as certain provisions under the BCBCA, and applicable Canadian securities laws, may discourage, delay or prevent a merger, acquisition or other change in control of us that shareholders may consider favorable, including transactions in which they might otherwise receive a premium for their common shares. These provisions include the establishment of a staggered board of directors, which divides the board into three groups, with directors in each group serving a three-year term. The existence of a staggered board can make it more difficult for shareholders to replace or remove incumbent members of our board of directors. As such, these provisions could also limit the price that investors might be willing to pay in the future for our common shares, thereby depressing the market price of our common shares. In addition, because our board of directors is responsible for appointing the members of our management team, these provisions may frustrate or prevent any attempts by our shareholders to replace or remove our current management by making it more difficult for shareholders to replace members of our board of directors. Among other things, these provisions include the following:

- shareholders cannot amend our articles unless such amendment is approved by shareholders holding at least a majority of the shares entitled to vote on such approval;
- our board of directors may, without shareholder approval, issue preferred shares having any terms, conditions, rights, preferences and privileges as the board of directors may determine; and
- shareholders must give advance notice to nominate directors or to submit proposals for consideration at shareholders' meetings.

USE OF PROCEEDS

Unless we otherwise indicate in a prospectus supplement, we currently intend to use the net proceeds from any sale of our securities to advance business objectives outlined above under “Our Business – Our Strategy” and in the documents incorporated by reference herein, for working capital requirements and for our clinical development expenses, clinical trials and additional product candidate manufacturing.

As we currently have no revenues from product sales, we experienced a negative operating cash flow for the year ended December 31, 2017 and expect to experience a negative operating cash flow for the 2018 fiscal year. In order to raise additional funds to finance future growth opportunities, we may, from time to time, issue securities (including debt securities). See “Risk Factors”.

More detailed information regarding the use of proceeds from the sale of securities will be described in any applicable prospectus supplement. We may also, from time to time, issue securities otherwise than pursuant to a prospectus supplement to this prospectus.

PRIOR SALES

The following table summarizes issuances of our common shares and securities convertible or exchangeable into common shares during the 12-month period preceding the date of this prospectus.

<u>Date of Issuance</u>	<u>Type of Security</u>	<u>Number of Securities Issued</u>	<u>Issuance/ Exercise Price per Security (C\$)</u>	<u>Issuance/ Exercise Price per Security (US\$)(1)</u>
May 17, 2018	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	3,142	4.75	3.68
May 16, 2018	Stock Options	36,400	21.04	16.32
May 16, 2018	Stock Options	41,000	—	16.42
May 15, 2018	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	1,000	4.75	3.68
May 10, 2018	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Warrants	79,481	—	8.67
May 8, 2018	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	1,222	12.10	9.38
May 3, 2018	Stock Options	26,858	—	15.90
May 1, 2018	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	1,047	4.75	3.68
March 23, 2018	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	1,000	7.26	5.63
March 22, 2018	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	1,000	4.75	3.68
March 21, 2018	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	1,000	4.75	3.68
March 19, 2018	Stock Options	234,025	15.59	12.09
March 19, 2018	Stock Options	565,500	—	11.84
February 27, 2018	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	917	12.10	9.38
February 27, 2018	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	795	4.75	3.68
February 7, 2018	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	800	4.75	3.68
January 25, 2018	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	695	4.75	3.68
January 10, 2018	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	1,000	4.75	3.68
January 8, 2018	Common Shares Issued Pursuant to Company's Employee Stock Purchase Plan	7,610	—	6.57
January 3, 2018	Common Shares Issued Pursuant to Company's Employee Stock Purchase Plan	5,637	—	6.57
December 31, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	7,647	4.75	3.68

[Table of Contents](#)

<u>Date of Issuance</u>	<u>Type of Security</u>	<u>Number of Securities Issued</u>	<u>Issuance/ Exercise Price per Security (C\$)</u>	<u>Issuance/ Exercise Price per Security (US\$)(1)</u>
December 29, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	2,131	4.75	3.68
December 28, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	21,562	4.75	3.68
December 21, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	15,302	4.75	3.68
December 21, 2017	Stock Options	59,000	9.94	7.71
December 21, 2017	Stock Options	9,000	—	7.75
December 14, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	1,657	4.75	3.68
December 7, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	1,195	4.75	3.68
December 6, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	400	4.75	3.68
November 29, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	9,176	4.75	3.68
November 22, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	900	4.75	3.68
November 20, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	2,095	4.75	3.68
November 17, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	2,095	5.37	4.16
November 17, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	2,100	4.75	3.68
November 15, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	500	4.75	3.68
October 25, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	8,171	5.37	4.16
October 16, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	8,170	5.37	4.16
October 16, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	20,950	7.26	5.63
August 14, 2017	Stock Options	18,855	—	6.80
July 12, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Exercise of Stock Options	5,236	4.75	3.68
June 12, 2017	Stock Options	208,225	13.21	10.25
June 12, 2017	Stock Options	622,625	—	9.82
May 31, 2017	Common Shares Issued on Underwriters' Partial Exercise of Over-Allotment Option	394,467	—	13.00

Canadian dollar amounts have been converted to U.S. dollars based on the historical Canadian to U.S. daily average rate of exchange as at March 29, 2018. For further information, see "Exchange Rate Information."

MARKET FOR SECURITIES

Our common shares are listed for trading on the TSX and on the NYSE under the trading symbol “ZYME”. The following tables set forth the high and low sale prices and the trading volume for our common shares on the TSX and the NYSE for each of the months indicated.

Toronto Stock Exchange

<u>Month</u>	<u>High</u>	<u>Low</u>	<u>Volume</u>
	(C\$)	(C\$)	(No. of Common Shares)
June, 2017	15.80	10.50	52,106
July, 2017	11.05	8.81	46,962
August, 2017	11.48	8.05	31,962
September, 2017	11.20	8.60	13,171
October, 2017	11.60	10.41	77,167
November, 2017	11.60	9.00	553,565
December, 2017	11.38	9.37	51,700
January, 2018	17.20	9.64	105,228
February, 2018	16.40	12.12	28,626
March, 2018	16.47	12.60	58,315
April, 2018	23.15	14.00	100,648
May, 2018 ⁽¹⁾	22.11	18.43	176,119

(1) From May 1, 2018 to May 17, 2018, the last trading day prior to the date of this prospectus.

On May 17, 2018, the closing price of our common shares on the TSX was C\$22.11 per share.

NYSE

<u>Month</u>	<u>High</u>	<u>Low</u>	<u>Volume</u>
	(US\$)	(US\$)	(No. of Common Shares)
June, 2017	11.72	7.53	164,555
July, 2017	8.51	7.03	54,128
August, 2017	8.80	6.31	41,854
September, 2017	8.75	7.04	45,961
October, 2017	9.25	8.09	34,799
November, 2017	9.24	6.87	124,548
December, 2017	8.91	7.27	63,357
January, 2018	14.00	7.69	107,781
February, 2018	13.41	9.57	100,508
March, 2018	12.50	9.73	68,589
April, 2018	17.95	10.55	161,026
May, 2018 ⁽¹⁾	17.34	14.40	146,663

(1) From May 1, 2018 to May 17, 2018, the last trading day prior to the date of this prospectus.

On May 17, 2018, the closing price of our common shares on the NYSE was \$17.34 per share.

EARNINGS COVERAGE

If we offer debt securities having a term to maturity in excess of one year or preferred shares under this prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement, the applicable prospectus supplement will include earnings coverage ratios giving effect to the issuance of such securities.

CONSOLIDATED CAPITALIZATION

There have been no material changes in the share and loan capital of the Company, on a consolidated basis, since March 31, 2018, the date of the most recently filed financial statements of the Company.

DESCRIPTION OF SHARE CAPITAL

General

The following is a summary of the material rights of our common shares and preferred shares, as contained in our notice of articles and articles and any amendments thereto. This summary is not a complete description of the share rights associated with our common shares and preferred shares. For more detailed information, please see the forms of our BCBCA notice of articles and articles, which are filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part.

Share Capital

The Company's authorized share capital consists of an unlimited number of common shares and an unlimited number of preferred shares. As at the date of this prospectus, 25,550,352 common shares and no preferred shares are issued and outstanding.

Common Shares

The shareholders of the Company are entitled to one vote for each common share on all matters to be voted on by the shareholders. Each common share is equal to every other common share and all common shares participate equally on liquidation, dissolution or winding up of our Company, whether voluntary or involuntary, or any other distribution of our assets among our shareholders for the purpose of winding up our affairs after the Company has paid out its liabilities. The shareholders are entitled to receive pro rata such dividends as may be declared by our board of directors out of funds legally available for such purpose and to receive pro rata the remaining property of the Company upon dissolution. No shares have been issued subject to call or assessment. There are no pre-emptive or conversion rights, and no provisions for redemption, retraction, purchase or cancellation, surrender, sinking fund or purchase fund. Provisions as to the creation, modification, amendment or variation of such rights or such provisions are contained in the BCBCA and the articles of the Company.

Dividend Policy

The Company has neither declared nor paid dividends on its common shares. The Company has no present intention of paying dividends on its common shares, as it anticipates that all available funds will be invested to finance the growth of its business.

Preferred Shares

We may issue our preferred shares from time to time in one or more series. The terms of each series of preferred shares, including the number of shares, the designation, rights, preferences, privileges, priorities, restrictions, conditions and limitations, will be determined at the time of creation of each such series by our board of directors, without shareholder approval, provided that all preferred shares will rank equally within their class as to dividends and distributions in the event of our dissolution, liquidation or winding-up.

DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES

In this description of debt securities section, “we”, “us”, “our”, or “Zymeworks” refer to Zymeworks Inc. but not to its subsidiaries.

This section describes the general terms that will apply to any debt securities issued pursuant to this prospectus. We may issue debt securities in one or more series under an indenture, or the indenture, to be entered into between us and one or more trustees. The indenture will be subject to and governed by the *United States Trust Indenture Act of 1939*, as amended (the “Trust Indenture Act”), and the BCBCA. A copy of the form of the indenture will be filed with the SEC as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part. The following description sets forth certain general terms and provisions of the debt securities and is not intended to be complete. For a more complete description, prospective investors should refer to the indenture and the terms of the debt securities. If debt securities are issued, we will describe in the applicable prospectus supplement the particular terms and provisions of any series of the debt securities and a description of how the general terms and provisions described below may apply to that series of the debt securities. Prospective investors should rely on information in the applicable prospectus supplement and not on the following information to the extent that the information in such prospectus supplement is different from the following information.

We may issue debt securities and incur additional indebtedness other than through the offering of debt securities pursuant to this prospectus.

General

The indenture will not limit the aggregate principal amount of debt securities that we may issue under the indenture and will not limit the amount of other indebtedness that we may incur. The indenture will provide that we may issue debt securities from time to time in one or more series and may be denominated and payable in U.S. dollars, Canadian dollars or any foreign currency. Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, the debt securities will be our unsecured obligations. The indenture will also permit us to increase the principal amount of any series of the debt securities previously issued and to issue that increased principal amount.

The applicable prospectus supplement for any series of debt securities that we offer will describe the specific terms of the debt securities and may include, but is not limited to, any of the following:

- the title of the debt securities;
- the aggregate principal amount of the debt securities;
- the percentage of principal amount at which the debt securities will be issued;
- whether payment on the debt securities will be senior or subordinated to our other liabilities or obligations;
- whether the payment of the debt securities will be guaranteed by any other person;
- the date or dates, or the methods by which such dates will be determined or extended, on which we may issue the debt securities and the date or dates, or the methods by which such dates will be determined or extended, on which we will pay the principal and any premium on the debt securities and the portion (if less than the principal amount) of debt securities to be payable upon a declaration of acceleration of maturity;
- whether the debt securities will bear interest, the interest rate (whether fixed or variable) or the method of determining the interest rate, the date from which interest will accrue, the dates on which we will pay interest and the record dates for interest payments, or the methods by which such dates will be determined or extended;

Table of Contents

- the place or places we will pay principal, premium, if any, and interest and the place or places where debt securities can be presented for registration of transfer or exchange;
- whether and under what circumstances we will be required to pay any additional amounts for withholding or deduction for Canadian taxes with respect to the debt securities, and whether and on what terms we will have the option to redeem the debt securities rather than pay the additional amounts;
- whether we will be obligated to redeem or repurchase the debt securities pursuant to any sinking or purchase fund or other provisions, or at the option of a holder and the terms and conditions of such redemption;
- whether we may redeem the debt securities at our option and the terms and conditions of any such redemption;
- the denominations in which we will issue any registered debt securities, if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any multiple of \$1,000 and, if other than denominations of \$5,000, the denominations in which any unregistered debt security shall be issuable;
- whether we will make payments on the debt securities in a currency or currency unit other than U.S. dollars or by delivery of our common shares or other property;
- whether payments on the debt securities will be payable with reference to any index or formula;
- whether we will issue the debt securities as global securities and, if so, the identity of the depositary for the global securities;
- whether we will issue the debt securities as unregistered securities (with or without coupons), registered securities or both;
- the periods within which and the terms and conditions, if any, upon which we may redeem the debt securities prior to maturity and the price or prices of which and the currency or currency units in which the debt securities are payable;
- any changes or additions to events of default or covenants;
- the applicability of, and any changes or additions to, the provisions for defeasance described under “Defeasance” below;
- whether the holders of any series of debt securities have special rights if specified events occur;
- any mandatory or optional redemption or sinking fund or analogous provisions;
- the terms, if any, for any conversion or exchange of the debt securities for any other securities;
- rights, if any, on a change of control;
- provisions as to modification, amendment or variation of any rights or terms attaching to the debt securities; and
- any other terms, conditions, rights and preferences (or limitations on such rights and preferences) including covenants and events of default which apply solely to a particular series of the debt securities being offered which do not apply generally to other debt securities, or any covenants or events of default generally applicable to the debt securities which do not apply to a particular series of the debt securities.

Unless stated otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, no holder of debt securities will have the right to require us to repurchase the debt securities and there will be no increase in the interest rate if we become involved in a highly leveraged transaction or we have a change of control.

Table of Contents

We may issue debt securities bearing no interest or interest at a rate below the prevailing market rate at the time of issuance, and offer and sell these securities at a discount below their stated principal amount. We may also sell any of the debt securities for a foreign currency or currency unit, and payments on the debt securities may be payable in a foreign currency or currency unit. In any of these cases, we will describe certain Canadian federal and U.S. federal income tax consequences and other special considerations in the applicable prospectus supplement.

We may issue debt securities with terms different from those of debt securities previously issued and, without the consent of the holders thereof, we may reopen a previous issue of a series of debt securities and issue additional debt securities of such series (unless the reopening was restricted when such series was created).

Ranking and Other Indebtedness

Unless otherwise indicated in an applicable prospectus supplement, our debt securities will be unsecured obligations and will rank equally with all of our other unsecured and unsubordinated debt from time to time outstanding and equally with other securities issued under the indenture. The debt securities will be structurally subordinated to all existing and future liabilities, including trade payables, of our subsidiaries.

Our board of directors may establish the extent and manner, if any, to which payment on or in respect of a series of debt securities will be senior or will be subordinated to the prior payment of our other liabilities and obligations and whether the payment of principal, premium, if any, and interest, if any, will be guaranteed by any other person and the nature and priority of any security.

Debt Securities in Global Form

The Depositary and Book-Entry

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, a series of the debt securities may be issued in whole or in part in global form as a “global security” and will be registered in the name of and be deposited with a depository, or its nominee, each of which will be identified in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to that series. Unless and until exchanged, in whole or in part, for the debt securities in definitive registered form, a global security may not be transferred except as a whole by the depository for such global security to a nominee of the depository, by a nominee of the depository to the depository or another nominee of the depository or by the depository or any such nominee to a successor of the depository or a nominee of the successor.

The specific terms of the depository arrangement with respect to any portion of a particular series of the debt securities to be represented by a global security will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to such series. We anticipate that the provisions described in this section will apply to all depository arrangements.

Upon the issuance of a global security, the depository therefor or its nominee will credit, on its book entry and registration system, the respective principal amounts of the debt securities represented by the global security to the accounts of such persons, designated as “participants”, having accounts with such depository or its nominee. Such accounts shall be designated by the underwriters, dealers or agents participating in the distribution of the debt securities or by us if such debt securities are offered and sold directly by us. Ownership of beneficial interests in a global security will be limited to participants or persons that may hold beneficial interests through participants. Ownership of beneficial interests in a global security will be shown on, and the transfer of that ownership will be effected only through, records maintained by the depository therefor or its nominee (with respect to interests of participants) or by participants or persons that hold through participants (with respect to interests of persons other than participants). The laws of some states in the United States may require that certain purchasers of securities take physical delivery of such securities in definitive form.

Table of Contents

So long as the depositary for a global security or its nominee is the registered owner of the global security, such depositary or such nominee, as the case may be, will be considered the sole owner or holder of the debt securities represented by the global security for all purposes under the indenture. Except as provided below, owners of beneficial interests in a global security will not be entitled to have a series of the debt securities represented by the global security registered in their names, will not receive or be entitled to receive physical delivery of such series of the debt securities in definitive form and will not be considered the owners or holders thereof under the indenture.

Any payments of principal, premium, if any, and interest, if any, on global securities registered in the name of a depositary or its nominee will be made to the depositary or its nominee, as the case may be, as the registered owner of the global security representing such debt securities. None of us, the trustee or any paying agent for the debt securities represented by the global securities will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests of the global security or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests.

We expect that the depositary for a global security or its nominee, upon receipt of any payment of principal, premium, if any, or interest, if any, will credit participants' accounts with payments in amounts proportionate to their respective beneficial interests in the principal amount of the global security as shown on the records of such depositary or its nominee. We also expect that payments by participants to owners of beneficial interests in a global security held through such participants will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is now the case with securities held for the accounts of customers registered in "street name", and will be the responsibility of such participants.

Discontinuance of Depositary's Services

If a depositary for a global security representing a particular series of the debt securities is at any time unwilling or unable to continue as depositary and a successor depositary is not appointed by us within 90 days, we will issue such series of the debt securities in definitive form in exchange for a global security representing such series of the debt securities. If an event of default under the indenture has occurred and is continuing, debt securities in definitive form will be printed and delivered upon written request by the holder to the trustee. In addition, we may at any time and in our sole discretion determine not to have a series of the debt securities represented by a global security and, in such event, will issue a series of the debt securities in definitive form in exchange for all of the global securities representing that series of debt securities.

Debt Securities in Definitive Form

A series of the debt securities may be issued in definitive form, solely as registered securities, solely as unregistered securities or as both registered securities and unregistered securities. Registered securities will be issuable in denominations of \$1,000 and integral multiples of \$1,000 and unregistered securities will be issuable in denominations of \$5,000 and integral multiples of \$5,000 or, in each case, in such other denominations as may be set out in the terms of the debt securities of any particular series. Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, unregistered securities will have interest coupons attached.

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, payment of principal, premium, if any, and interest, if any, on the debt securities (other than global securities) will be made at the office or agency of the trustee, or at our option we can pay principal, interest, if any, and premium, if any, by check mailed or delivered to the address of the person entitled at the address appearing in the security register of the trustee or electronic funds wire or other transmission to an account of the person entitled to receive payments. Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, payment of interest, if any, will be made to the persons in whose name the debt securities are registered at the close of business on the day or days specified by us.

At the option of the holder of debt securities, registered securities of any series will be exchangeable for other registered securities of the same series, of any authorized denomination and of a like aggregate principal amount

[Table of Contents](#)

and tenor. If, but only if, provided in an applicable prospectus supplement, unregistered securities (with all unmatured coupons, except as provided below, and all matured coupons in default) of any series may be exchanged for registered securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of a like aggregate principal amount and tenor. In such event, unregistered securities surrendered in a permitted exchange for registered securities between a regular record date or a special record date and the relevant date for payment of interest shall be surrendered without the coupon relating to such date for payment of interest, and interest will not be payable on such date for payment of interest in respect of the registered security issued in exchange for such unregistered security, but will be payable only to the holder of such coupon when due in accordance with the terms of the indenture. Unless otherwise specified in an applicable prospectus supplement, unregistered securities will not be issued in exchange for registered securities.

The applicable prospectus supplement may indicate the places to register a transfer of the debt securities in definitive form. Except for certain restrictions set forth in the indenture, no service charge will be payable by the holder for any registration of transfer or exchange of the debt securities in definitive form, but we may, in certain instances, require a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charges payable in connection with these transactions.

We shall not be required to:

- issue, register the transfer of or exchange any series of the debt securities in definitive form during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before any selection of securities of that series of the debt securities to be redeemed and ending on the relevant redemption date if the debt securities for which such issuance, registration or exchange is requested may be among those selected for redemption;
- register the transfer of or exchange any registered security in definitive form, or portion thereof, called for redemption, except the unredeemed portion of any registered security being redeemed in part;
- exchange any unregistered security called for redemption except to the extent that such unregistered security may be exchanged for a registered security of that series and like tenor; provided that such registered security will be simultaneously surrendered for redemption with written instructions for payment consistent with the provisions of the indenture; or
- issue, register the transfer of or exchange any of the debt securities in definitive form which have been surrendered for repayment at the option of the holder, except the portion, if any, thereof not to be so repaid.

Merger, Amalgamation or Consolidation

The indenture will provide that we may not consolidate with or amalgamate or merge with or into any other person, enter into any statutory arrangement with any person or convey, transfer or lease our properties and assets substantially as an entirety to another person, unless among other items:

- we are the surviving person, or the resulting, surviving or transferee person, if other than us, is organized and existing under the laws of the United States, any state thereof or the District of Columbia, Canada, or any province or territory thereof, or, if the amalgamation, merger, consolidation, statutory arrangement or other transaction would not impair the rights of holders, any other country;
- the successor person (if not us) assumes all of our obligations under the debt securities and the indenture; and
- we or such successor person will not be in default under the indenture immediately after the transaction.

When such a person assumes our obligations in such circumstances, subject to certain exceptions, we shall be discharged from all obligations under the debt securities and the indenture.

Additional Amounts

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, all payments made by or on behalf of us under or with respect to the debt securities will be made free and clear of and without withholding or deduction for or on account of any present or future tax, duty, levy, impost, assessment or other government charge (including penalties, interest and other liabilities related thereto) imposed or levied by or on behalf of the Government of Canada or of any province or territory thereof or by any authority or agency therein or thereof having power to tax, or Canadian Taxes, unless we are required to withhold or deduct Canadian Taxes by law or by the interpretation or administration thereof by the relevant government authority or agency.

If we are so required to withhold or deduct any amount for or on account of Canadian Taxes from any payment made under or with respect to the debt securities, we will pay as additional interest such additional amounts, or the additional amounts, as may be necessary so that the net amount received by a holder of the debt securities after such withholding or deduction will not be less than the amount such holder of the debt securities would have received if such Canadian Taxes had not been withheld or deducted (a similar payment will also be made to holders of the debt securities, other than excluded holders (as defined herein), that are exempt from withholding but required to pay tax under Part XIII of the *Income Tax Act* (Canada) (the "ITA"), directly on amounts otherwise subject to withholding); provided, however, that no additional amounts will be payable with respect to a payment made to a holder of the debt securities, or an excluded holder, in respect of the beneficial owner thereof:

- with which we do not deal at arm's length (for purposes of the ITA) at the time of the making of such payment;
- which is subject to such Canadian Taxes by reason of the debt securities holder's failure to comply with any certification, identification, information, documentation or other reporting requirement if compliance is required by law, regulation, administrative practice or an applicable treaty as a precondition to exemption from, or a reduction in the rate of deduction or withholding of, such Canadian Taxes;
- which is subject to such Canadian Taxes by reason of the debt securities holder being a resident, domicile or national of, or engaged in business or maintaining a permanent establishment or other physical presence in or otherwise having some connection with Canada or any province or territory thereof otherwise than by the mere holding of the debt securities or the receipt of payments thereunder; or
- which is subject to such Canadian Taxes because it is not entitled to the benefit of an otherwise applicable tax treaty by reason of the legal nature of such holder of the debt securities.

We will make such withholding or deduction and remit the full amount deducted or withheld to the relevant authority as and when required in accordance with applicable law. We will pay all taxes, interest and other liabilities which arise by virtue of any failure of us to withhold, deduct and remit to the relevant authority on a timely basis the full amounts required in accordance with applicable law. We will furnish to the holder of the debt securities, within 60 days after the date the payment of any Canadian Taxes is due pursuant to applicable law, certified copies of tax receipts evidencing such payment by us.

Whenever in the indenture there is mentioned, in any context, the payment of principal, premium, if any, interest or any other payment under or with respect to a debt security, such mention shall be deemed to include mention of the payment of additional amounts to the extent that, in such context, additional amounts are, were or could be payable in respect thereof.

The foregoing obligations shall survive any termination, defeasance or discharge of the indenture.

Tax Redemption

If and to the extent specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, the debt securities of a series will be subject to redemption at any time, in whole but not in part, at a redemption price equal to the principal amount thereof together with accrued and unpaid interest to the date fixed for redemption, upon the giving of a notice as described below, if (1) we determine that (a) as a result of any change in or amendment to the laws (or any regulations or rulings promulgated thereunder) of Canada or of any political subdivision or taxing authority thereof or therein affecting taxation, or any change in position regarding application or interpretation of such laws, regulations or rulings (including a holding by a court of competent jurisdiction), which change or amendment is announced or becomes effective on or after a date specified in the applicable prospectus supplement if any date is so specified, we have or will become obligated to pay, on the next succeeding date on which interest is due, additional amounts with respect to any debt security of such series as described under “Additional Amounts” or (b) on or after a date specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, any action has been taken by any taxing authority of, or any decision has been rendered by a court of competent jurisdiction in, Canada or any political subdivision or taxing authority thereof or therein, including any of those actions specified in (a) above, whether or not such action was taken or decision was rendered with respect to us, or any change, amendment, application or interpretation shall be proposed, which, in any such case, in the written opinion to us of legal counsel of recognized standing, will result in our becoming obligated to pay, on the next succeeding date on which interest is due, additional amounts with respect to any debt security of such series and (2) in any such case, we, in our business judgment, determine that such obligation cannot be avoided by the use of reasonable measures available to us; provided however, that (i) no such notice of redemption may be given earlier than 90 days prior to the earliest date on which we would be obligated to pay such additional amounts were a payment in respect of the debt securities then due, and (ii) at the time such notice of redemption is given, such obligation to pay such additional amounts remains in effect.

In the event that we elect to redeem the debt securities of such series pursuant to the provisions set forth in the preceding paragraph, we shall deliver to the trustee a certificate, signed by an authorized officer, stating that we are entitled to redeem the debt securities of such series pursuant to their terms.

Provision of Financial Information

We will file with the trustee, within 20 days after we file or furnish them with the SEC, copies of our annual reports and of the information, documents and other reports (or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the SEC may by rules and regulations prescribe) which we are required to file or furnish with the SEC pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act.

Notwithstanding that we may not remain subject to the reporting requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act or otherwise report on an annual and quarterly basis on forms provided for such annual and quarterly reporting pursuant to rules and regulations promulgated by the SEC, we will continue to provide the trustee:

- within 20 days after the time periods required for the filing or furnishing of such forms by the SEC, annual reports on Form 40-F, Form 20-F or Form 10-K, as applicable, or any successor form; and
- within 20 days after the time periods required for the filing of such forms by the SEC, reports on Form 8-K or Form 6-K (or any successor form), as applicable, which, regardless of applicable requirements shall, at a minimum, contain such information required to be provided in quarterly reports under the laws of Canada or any province thereof to security holders of a corporation with securities listed on the TSX, whether or not we have any of the debt securities listed on such exchange. Each of such reports, to the extent permitted by the rules and regulations of the SEC, will be prepared in accordance with Canadian disclosure requirements and generally accepted accounting principles provided, however, that we shall not be obligated to file or furnish such reports with the SEC if the SEC does not permit such filings.

Events of Default

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to a particular series of debt securities, the following is a summary of events which will, with respect to any series of the debt securities, constitute an event of default under the indenture with respect to the debt securities of that series:

- we fail to pay principal of, or any premium on, any debt security of that series when it is due and payable;
- we fail to pay interest or any additional amounts payable on any debt security of that series when it becomes due and payable, and such default continues for 30 days;
- we fail to make any required sinking fund or analogous payment for that series of debt securities;
- we fail to observe or perform any of the covenants described in the section “— Merger, Amalgamation or Consolidation” for a period of 30 days;
- we fail to comply with any of our other agreements in the indenture that affect or are applicable to the debt securities for 60 days after written notice by the trustee or to us and the trustee by holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series affected thereby;
- a default (as defined in any indenture or instrument under which we or one of our subsidiaries has at the time of the indenture relating to this prospectus or will thereafter have outstanding any indebtedness) has occurred and is continuing, or we or any of our subsidiaries has failed to pay principal amounts with respect to such indebtedness at maturity and such event of default or failure to pay has resulted in such indebtedness under such indentures or instruments being declared due, payable or otherwise being accelerated, in either event so that an amount in excess of the greater of \$10,000,000 and 2% of our shareholders’ equity will be or become due, payable and accelerated upon such declaration or prior to the date on which the same would otherwise have become due, payable and accelerated, or the accelerated indebtedness, and such acceleration will not be rescinded or annulled, or such event of default or failure to pay under such indenture or instrument will not be remedied or cured, whether by payment or otherwise, or waived by the holders of such accelerated indebtedness, then (i) if the accelerated indebtedness will be as a result of an event of default which is not related to the failure to pay principal or interest on the terms, at the times, and on the conditions set out in any such indenture or instrument, it will not be considered an event of default for the purposes of the indenture governing the debt securities relating to this prospectus until 30 days after such indebtedness has been accelerated, or (ii) if the accelerated indebtedness will occur as a result of such failure to pay principal or interest or as a result of an event of default which is related to the failure to pay principal or interest on the terms, at the times, and on the conditions set out in any such indenture or instrument, then (A) if such accelerated indebtedness is, by its terms, non-recourse to us or our subsidiaries, it will be considered an event of default for purposes of the indenture governing the debt securities relating to this prospectus; or (B) if such accelerated indebtedness is recourse to us or our subsidiaries, any requirement in connection with such failure to pay or event of default for the giving of notice or the lapse of time or the happening of any further condition, event or act under such indenture or instrument in connection with such failure to pay or event of default will be applicable together with an additional seven days before being considered an event of default for the purposes of the indenture relating to this prospectus;
- certain events involving our bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization; and
- any other event of default provided for in that series of debt securities.

A default under one series of debt securities will not necessarily be a default under another series. The trustee may withhold notice to the holders of the debt securities of any default, except in the payment of principal or premium, if any, or interest, if any, if in good faith it considers it in the interests of the holders to do so.

Table of Contents

If an event of default for any series of debt securities occurs and continues, the trustee or the holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the debt securities of that series, subject to any subordination provisions, may require us to repay immediately:

- the entire principal and interest and premium, if any, of the debt securities of the series; or
- if the debt securities are discounted securities, that portion of the principal as is described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

If an event of default relates to events involving our bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization, the principal of all debt securities will become immediately due and payable without any action by the trustee or any holder. Subject to certain conditions, the holders of a majority of the aggregate principal amount of the debt securities of the affected series can rescind this accelerated payment requirement. If debt securities are discounted securities, the applicable prospectus supplement will contain provisions relating to the acceleration of maturity of a portion of the principal amount of the discounted securities upon the occurrence or continuance of an event of default.

Other than its duties in case of a default, the trustee is not obligated to exercise any of the rights or powers that it will have under the indenture at the request, order or direction of any holders, unless the holders offer the trustee reasonable indemnity. If they provide this reasonable indemnity, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of any series of debt securities may, subject to certain limitations, direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding or any remedy available to the trustee, or exercising any power conferred upon the trustee, for any series of debt securities.

We will be required to furnish to the trustee a statement annually as to our compliance with all conditions and covenants under the indenture and, if we are not in compliance, we must specify any defaults. We will also be required to notify the trustee as soon as practicable upon becoming aware of any event of default.

No holder of a debt security of any series will have any right to institute any proceeding with respect to the indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or a trustee, or for any other remedy, unless:

- the holder has previously given to the trustee written notice of a continuing event of default with respect to the debt securities of the affected series;
- the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the series affected by an event of default have made a written request, and the holders have offered reasonable indemnity, to the trustee to institute a proceeding as trustee; and
- the trustee has failed to institute a proceeding, and has not received from the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the series affected by an event of default a direction inconsistent with the request, within 60 days after their notice, request and offer of indemnity.

However, such above-mentioned limitations do not apply to a suit instituted by the holder of a debt security for the enforcement of payment of the principal of or any premium, if any, or interest on such debt security on or after the applicable due date specified in such debt security.

Defeasance

When we use the term “defeasance”, we mean discharge from some or all of our obligations under the indenture. Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, if we deposit with the trustee sufficient cash or government securities to pay the principal, interest, if any, premium, if any, and any other sums due to the stated maturity date or a redemption date of the debt securities of a series, then at our option:

- we will be discharged from the obligations with respect to the debt securities of that series; or

[Table of Contents](#)

- we will no longer be under any obligation to comply with certain restrictive covenants under the indenture, and certain events of default will no longer apply to us.

If this happens, the holders of the debt securities of the affected series will not be entitled to the benefits of the indenture except for registration of transfer and exchange of debt securities and the replacement of lost, stolen or mutilated debt securities. These holders may look only to the deposited fund for payment on their debt securities.

To exercise our defeasance option, we must deliver to the trustee:

- an opinion of counsel in the United States to the effect that the holders of the outstanding debt securities of the affected series will not recognize a gain or loss for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a result of a defeasance and will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if the defeasance had not occurred;
- an opinion of counsel in Canada or a ruling from the Canada Revenue Agency to the effect that the holders of the outstanding debt securities of the affected series will not recognize income, or a gain or loss for Canadian federal, provincial or territorial income or other tax purposes as a result of a defeasance and will be subject to Canadian federal, provincial or territorial income tax and other tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case had the defeasance not occurred; and
- a certificate of one of our officers and an opinion of counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent provided for relating to defeasance have been complied with.

If we are to be discharged from our obligations with respect to the debt securities, and not just from our covenants, the U.S. opinion must be based upon a ruling from or published by the United States Internal Revenue Service or a change in law to that effect.

In addition to the delivery of the opinions described above, the following conditions must be met before we may exercise our defeasance option:

- no event of default or event that, with the passing of time or the giving of notice, or both, shall constitute an event of default shall have occurred and be continuing for the debt securities of the affected series;
- we are not an “insolvent person” within the meaning of applicable bankruptcy and insolvency legislation; and
- other customary conditions precedent are satisfied.

Modification and Waiver

Modifications and amendments of the indenture may be made by us and the trustee with the consent of the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of each series affected by the modification. However, without the consent of each holder affected, no modification may:

- change the stated maturity of the principal of, premium, if any, or any installment of interest, if any, on any debt security;
- reduce the principal, premium, if any, or rate of interest, if any, or any obligation to pay any additional amounts;
- reduce the amount of principal of a debt security payable upon acceleration of its maturity;
- change the place or currency of any payment;
- affect the holder’s right to require us to repurchase the debt securities at the holder’s option;

[Table of Contents](#)

- impair the right of the holders to institute a suit to enforce their rights to payment;
- adversely affect any conversion or exchange right related to a series of debt securities;
- change the percentage of debt securities required to modify the indenture or to waive compliance with certain provisions of the indenture; or
- reduce the percentage in principal amount of outstanding debt securities necessary to take certain actions.

The holders of a majority in principal amount of outstanding debt securities of any series may on behalf of the holders of all debt securities of that series waive, insofar as only that series is concerned, past defaults under the indenture and compliance by us with certain restrictive provisions of the indenture. However, these holders may not waive a default in any payment on any debt security or compliance with a provision that cannot be modified without the consent of each holder affected.

We may modify the indenture without the consent of the holders to:

- evidence our successor under the indenture;
- add covenants or surrender any right or power for the benefit of holders;
- add events of default;
- provide for unregistered securities to become registered securities under the indenture and make other such changes to unregistered securities that in each case do not materially and adversely affect the interests of holders of outstanding securities;
- establish the forms of the debt securities;
- appoint a successor trustee under the indenture;
- add provisions to permit or facilitate the defeasance or discharge of the debt securities as long as there is no material adverse effect on the holders;
- cure any ambiguity, correct or supplement any defective or inconsistent provision, make any other provisions in each case that would not materially and adversely affect the interests of holders of outstanding securities and related coupons, if any;
- comply with any applicable laws of the United States and Canada in order to effect and maintain the qualification of the indenture under the Trust Indenture Act; or
- change or eliminate any provisions where such change takes effect when there are no securities outstanding under the indenture.

Governing Law

The indenture and the debt securities will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

The Trustee

The trustee under the indenture or its affiliates may provide banking and other services to us in the ordinary course of their business.

The indenture will contain certain limitations on the rights of the trustee, as long as it or any of its affiliates remains our creditor, to obtain payment of claims in certain cases or to realize on certain property received on any claim as security or otherwise. The trustee and its affiliates will be permitted to engage in other transactions with us. If the trustee or any affiliate acquires any conflicting interest and a default occurs with respect to the debt securities, the trustee must eliminate the conflict or resign.

Resignation of Trustee

The trustee may resign or be removed with respect to one or more series of the debt securities and a successor trustee may be appointed to act with respect to such series. In the event that two or more persons are acting as trustee with respect to different series of debt securities, each such trustee shall be a trustee of a trust under the indenture separate and apart from the trust administered by any other such trustee, and any action described herein to be taken by the “trustee” may then be taken by each such trustee with respect to, and only with respect to, the one or more series of debt securities for which it is trustee.

Consent to Service

In connection with the indenture, we will designate and appoint the Corporation Trust Company, Corporation Trust Center, 1209 Orange Street, Wilmington, Delaware, 19801, as our authorized agent upon which process may be served in any suit or proceeding arising out of or relating to the indenture or the debt securities that may be instituted in any U.S. federal or New York state court located in the Borough of Manhattan, in the City of New York, or brought by the trustee (whether in its individual capacity or in its capacity as trustee under the indenture), and will irrevocably submit to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of such courts.

Enforceability of Judgments

Since all or substantially all of our assets, as well as the assets of most of our directors and officers, are outside the United States, any judgment obtained in the United States against us or certain of our directors or officers, including judgments with respect to the payment of principal on the debt securities, may not be collectible within the United States.

We have been advised that the laws of the Province of British Columbia and the federal laws of Canada applicable therein permit an action to be brought against us in a court of competent jurisdiction in the Province of British Columbia on any final and conclusive judgment in personam of any federal or state court located in the State of New York, or a New York Court, which is subsisting and unsatisfied for a sum certain with respect to the enforcement of the indenture and the debt securities that is not impeachable as void or voidable under the internal laws of the State of New York if: (1) the New York Court rendering such judgment had jurisdiction over the judgment debtor, as recognized by the courts of the Province of British Columbia (and submission by us in the indenture to the jurisdiction of the New York Court will be sufficient for that purpose); (2) proper service of process in respect of the proceedings in which such judgment was obtained was made in accordance with New York law; (3) such judgment was not obtained by fraud or in a manner contrary to natural justice and the enforcement thereof would not be inconsistent with public policy, as such terms are understood under the laws of the Province of British Columbia, the federal laws of Canada or contrary to any order made by the Attorney General of Canada and under the *Foreign Extraterritorial Measures Act* (Canada) or by the Competition Tribunal under the *Competition Act* (Canada); (4) the enforcement of such judgment would not be contrary to the laws of general application limiting the enforcement of creditors’ rights, including bankruptcy, reorganization, winding-up, moratorium and similar laws, and does not constitute, directly or indirectly, the enforcement of foreign laws which a court in the Province of British Columbia would characterize as revenue, expropriatory or penal laws; (5) in an action to enforce a default judgment, the judgment does not contain a manifest error on its face; (6) the action to enforce such judgment is commenced within the appropriate limitation period; (7) interest payable on the debt securities is not characterized by a court in the Province of British Columbia as interest payable at a criminal rate within the meaning of Section 347 of the *Criminal Code* (Canada); and (8) the judgment does not conflict with another final and conclusive judgment in the same cause of action; except that a court in the Province of British Columbia may stay an action to enforce a foreign judgment if an appeal of a judgment is pending or time for appeal has not expired; and except that any court in the Province of British Columbia may give judgment only in Canadian dollars.

We have been advised that there is doubt as to the enforceability in Canada by a court in original actions, or in actions to enforce judgments of U.S. courts, of civil liabilities predicated solely upon the U.S. federal securities laws.

DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS

General

This section describes the general terms that will apply to any warrants for the purchase of common shares, or equity warrants, or for the purchase of debt securities, or debt warrants. We will not offer warrants for sale separately to any member of the public in Canada unless the offering is in connection with and forms part of the consideration for an acquisition or merger transaction or unless the applicable prospectus supplement containing the specific terms of the warrants to be offered separately is first approved for filing by the securities commissions or similar regulatory authorities in each of the provinces and territories of Canada where the warrants will be offered for sale.

Subject to the foregoing, we may issue warrants independently or together with other securities, and warrants sold with other securities may be attached to or separate from the other securities. Warrants will be issued under one or more warrant indentures or warrant agency agreements to be entered into by us and one or more banks or trust companies acting as warrant agent.

This summary of some of the provisions of the warrants is not complete. The statements made in this prospectus relating to any warrant agreement and warrants to be issued under this prospectus are summaries of certain anticipated provisions thereof and do not purport to be complete and are subject to, and are qualified in their entirety by reference to, all provisions of the applicable warrant agreement. You should refer to the warrant indenture or warrant agency agreement relating to the specific warrants being offered for the complete terms of the warrants. A copy of any warrant indenture or warrant agency agreement relating to an offering of warrants will be filed by us with the securities regulatory authorities in Canada and the United States after we have entered into it.

The applicable prospectus supplement relating to any warrants that we offer will describe the particular terms of those warrants and include specific terms relating to the offering.

Original purchasers of warrants (if offered separately) will have a contractual right of rescission against us in respect of the exercise of such warrant. The contractual right of rescission will entitle such original purchasers to receive, upon surrender of the underlying securities acquired upon exercise of the warrant, the total of the amount paid on original purchase of the warrant and the amount paid upon exercise, in the event that this prospectus (as supplemented or amended) contains a misrepresentation, provided that: (i) the exercise takes place within 180 days of the date of the purchase of the warrant under the applicable prospectus supplement; and (ii) the right of rescission is exercised within 180 days of the date of purchase of the warrant under the applicable prospectus supplement. This contractual right of rescission will be consistent with the statutory right of rescission described under section 131 of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia), and is in addition to any other right or remedy available to original purchasers under section 131 of the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) or otherwise at law.

Original purchasers are further advised that in certain Canadian provinces and territories the statutory right of action for damages in connection with a prospectus misrepresentation is limited to the amount paid for the security that was purchased under a prospectus, and therefore a further payment at the time of exercise may not be recoverable in a statutory action for damages. A Canadian purchaser should refer to any applicable provisions of the securities legislation of the purchaser's province or territory for the particulars of these rights, or consult with a legal advisor.

Equity Warrants

The particular terms of each issue of equity warrants will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement. This description will include, where applicable:

- the designation and aggregate number of equity warrants;
- the price at which the equity warrants will be offered;

Table of Contents

- the currency or currencies in which the equity warrants will be offered;
- the date on which the right to exercise the equity warrants will commence and the date on which the right will expire;
- the number of common shares that may be purchased upon exercise of each equity warrant and the price at which and currency or currencies in which the common shares may be purchased upon exercise of each equity warrant;
- the terms of any provisions allowing or providing for adjustments in (i) the number and/or class of shares that may be purchased, (ii) the exercise price per share or (iii) the expiry of the equity warrants;
- whether we will issue fractional shares;
- whether we have applied to list the equity warrants or the underlying shares on a stock exchange;
- the designation and terms of any securities with which the equity warrants will be offered, if any, and the number of the equity warrants that will be offered with each security;
- the date or dates, if any, on or after which the equity warrants and the related securities will be transferable separately;
- whether the equity warrants will be subject to redemption and, if so, the terms of such redemption provisions;
- material U.S. and Canadian federal income tax consequences of owning the equity warrants; and
- any other material terms or conditions of the equity warrants.

Debt Warrants

The particular terms of each issue of debt warrants will be described in the related prospectus supplement. This description will include, where applicable:

- the designation and aggregate number of debt warrants;
- the price at which the debt warrants will be offered;
- the currency or currencies in which the debt warrants will be offered;
- the designation and terms of any securities with which the debt warrants are being offered, if any, and the number of the debt warrants that will be offered with each security;
- the date or dates, if any, on or after which the debt warrants and the related securities will be transferable separately;
- the principal amount of debt securities that may be purchased upon exercise of each debt warrant and the price at which and currency or currencies in which that principal amount of debt securities may be purchased upon exercise of each debt warrant;
- the date on which the right to exercise the debt warrants will commence and the date on which the right will expire;
- the minimum or maximum amount of debt warrants that may be exercised at any one time;
- whether the debt warrants will be subject to redemption, and, if so, the terms of such redemption provisions;
- material U.S. and Canadian federal income tax consequences of owning the debt warrants; and
- any other material terms or conditions of the debt warrants.

Prior to the exercise of their warrants, holders of warrants will not have any of the rights of holders of the securities subject to the warrants.

DESCRIPTION OF SUBSCRIPTION RECEIPTS

We may issue subscription receipts that are exchangeable for our equity securities and/or other securities. The particular terms and provisions of subscription receipts offered by any prospectus supplement, and the extent to which the general terms and provisions described below may apply to them, will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement. This description will include, without limitation, where applicable:

- the number of subscription receipts;
- the price at which the subscription receipts will be offered;
- the terms, conditions and procedures for the exchange of the subscription receipts into or for our equity securities and/or other securities;
- the number of our equity securities and/or other securities that may be issued or delivered upon exchange of each subscription receipt; and
- whether the subscription receipts will be issued in fully registered or global form.

Our equity securities and/or other securities issued or delivered upon the exchange of subscription receipts will be issued for no additional consideration.

Original purchasers of subscription receipts will have a contractual right of rescission against us in respect of the conversion of the subscription receipt. The contractual right of rescission will entitle such original purchasers to receive the amount paid on original purchase of the subscription receipt upon surrender of the underlying securities gained thereby, in the event that this prospectus (as supplemented or amended) contains a misrepresentation, provided that: (i) the conversion takes place within 180 days of the date of the purchase of the subscription receipt under this prospectus; and (ii) the right of rescission is exercised within 180 days of the date of purchase of the subscription receipt under this prospectus. This contractual right of rescission will be consistent with the statutory right of rescission described under section 131 of the Securities Act (British Columbia), and is in addition to any other right or remedy available to original purchasers under section 131 of the Securities Act (British Columbia) or otherwise at law.

Original purchasers are further advised that in certain Canadian provinces and territories the statutory right of action for damages in connection with a prospectus misrepresentation is limited to the amount paid for the security that was purchased under a prospectus, and therefore a further payment at the time of exercise may not be recoverable in a statutory action for damages. A Canadian purchaser should refer to any applicable provisions of the securities legislation of the purchaser's province or territory for the particulars of these rights, or consult with a legal advisor.

DESCRIPTION OF UNITS

The following description sets forth certain general terms and provisions of units to which any prospectus supplement may relate.

We may issue units comprised of one or more of the other securities described in this prospectus in any combination. Each unit will be issued so that the holder of the unit is also the holder of each security included in the unit. Thus, the holder of a unit will have the rights and obligations of a holder of each included security. The unit agreement under which a unit is issued, if any, may provide that the securities included in the unit may not be held or transferred separately, at any time or at any time before a specified date.

The applicable prospectus supplement may describe:

- the designation and terms of the units and of the securities comprising the units, including whether and under what circumstances those securities may be held or transferred separately;
- any provisions for the issuance, payment, settlement, transfer or exchange of the units or of the securities comprising the units; and
- whether the units will be issued in fully registered or global form.

The applicable prospectus supplement will describe the terms of any units. The preceding description and any description of units in the applicable prospectus supplement does not purport to be complete and is subject to and is qualified in its entirety by reference to the unit agreement and, if applicable, collateral arrangements and depositary arrangements relating to such units.

CERTAIN INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS

The applicable prospectus supplement may describe certain Canadian federal income tax consequences to an investor who is a non-resident of Canada or to an investor who is a resident of Canada of acquiring, owning and disposing of any of our securities offered thereunder.

The applicable prospectus supplement may also describe certain U.S. federal income tax consequences of the acquisition, ownership and disposition of any of our securities offered thereunder by an initial investor who is a U.S. person (within the meaning of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code), including, to the extent applicable, such consequences relating to debt securities payable in a currency other than the U.S. dollar, issued at an original issue discount for U.S. federal income tax purposes or containing early redemption provisions or other special items.

SELLING SECURITYHOLDERS

Our common shares may be sold under this prospectus by way of a secondary offering by or for the account of certain of our securityholders. The prospectus supplement that we will file in connection with any offering of our common shares by selling securityholders will include the following information:

- the names of the selling securityholders;
- the number or amount of our common shares owned, controlled or directed by each selling securityholder;
- the number or amount of our common shares being distributed for the account of each selling securityholder;
- the number or amount of securities to be owned by the selling securityholders after the distribution and the percentage that number or amount represents of the total number of our outstanding securities; and
- whether our common shares are owned by the selling securityholders both of record and beneficially, of record only or beneficially only.

PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

New Issue

We may issue our securities offered by this prospectus for cash or other consideration (i) to or through underwriters, dealers, placement agents or other intermediaries, (ii) directly to one or more purchasers or (iii) in connection with an acquisitions of assets or shares or another entity or company.

Each prospectus supplement with respect to our securities being offered by us will set forth the terms of the offering of our securities, including:

- the name or names of any underwriters, dealers or other placement agents;
- the number and the purchase price of, and form of consideration for, our securities;
- any proceeds to us; and
- any commissions, fees, discounts and other items constituting underwriters', dealers' or agents' compensation.

Our securities may be sold, from time to time, in one or more transactions at a fixed price or prices which may be changed or at market prices prevailing at the time of sale, at prices related to such prevailing market price or at negotiated prices, including sales in transactions that are deemed to be "at the market distributions" as defined in *National Instrument 44-102 Shelf Distributions*, including sales made directly on the TSX, the NYSE or other existing trading markets for the securities. The prices at which the securities may be offered may vary as between purchasers and during the period of distribution. If, in connection with the offering of securities at a fixed price or prices, the underwriters have made a bona fide effort to sell all of the securities at the initial offering price fixed in the applicable prospectus supplement, the public offering price may be decreased and thereafter further changed, from time to time, to an amount not greater than the initial public offering price fixed in such prospectus supplement, in which case the compensation realized by the underwriters will be decreased by the amount that the aggregate price paid by purchasers for the securities is less than the gross proceeds paid by the underwriters to the Company.

Only underwriters named in the prospectus supplement are deemed to be underwriters in connection with our securities offered by that prospectus supplement.

Under agreements which may be entered into by us, underwriters, dealers and agents who participate in the distribution of our securities may be entitled to indemnification by us against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, and applicable Canadian provincial securities legislation, or to contribution with respect to payments which such underwriters, dealers or agents may be required to make in respect thereof. The underwriters, dealers and agents with whom we enter into agreements may be customers of, engage in transactions with, or perform services for, us in the ordinary course of business.

No underwriter or dealer involved in an "at the market distribution" as defined under applicable Canadian securities legislation, no affiliate of such underwriter or dealer and no person acting jointly or in concert with such underwriter or dealer has over-allotted, or will over allot, our securities in connection with an offering of our securities or effect any other transactions that are intended to stabilize the market price of our securities.

In connection with any offering of our securities, other than an "at the market distribution", the underwriters may over-allot or effect transactions which stabilize or maintain the market price of our securities offered at a level above that which might otherwise prevail in the open market. Such transactions, if commenced, may be discontinued at any time.

Secondary Offering

This prospectus may also, from time to time, relate to the offering of our common shares by certain selling securityholders.

Table of Contents

The selling securityholders may sell all or a portion of our common shares beneficially owned by them and offered hereby from time to time directly or through one or more underwriters, broker-dealers or agents. If our common shares are sold through underwriters or broker-dealers, the selling securityholders will be responsible for underwriting discounts or commissions or agent's commissions. Our common shares may be sold by the selling securityholders in one or more transactions at fixed prices, at prevailing market prices at the time of the sale, at varying prices determined at the time of sale, or at negotiated prices. These sales may be effected in transactions, which may involve crosses or block transactions, as follows:

- on any national securities exchange or quotation service on which the securities may be listed or quoted at the time of sale;
- in the over-the-counter market;
- in transactions otherwise than on these exchanges or systems or in the over-the-counter market;
- through the writing of options, whether such options are listed on an options exchange or otherwise;
- ordinary brokerage transactions and transactions in which the broker-dealer solicits purchasers;
- block trades in which the broker-dealer will attempt to sell the shares as agent but may position and resell a portion of the block as principal to facilitate the transaction;
- purchases by a broker-dealer as principal and resale by the broker-dealer for its account;
- an exchange distribution in accordance with the rules of the applicable exchange;
- privately negotiated transactions;
- short sales;
- sales pursuant to Rule 144 under the U.S. Securities Act;
- broker-dealers may agree with the selling securityholders to sell a specified number of such shares at a stipulated price per share;
- a combination of any such methods of sale; and
- any other method permitted pursuant to applicable law.

If the selling securityholders effect such transactions by selling our common shares to or through underwriters, broker-dealers or agents, such underwriters, broker-dealers or agents may receive commissions in the form of discounts, concessions or commissions from the selling securityholders or commissions from purchasers of our common shares for whom they may act as agent or to whom they may sell as principal (which discounts, concessions or commissions as to particular underwriters, broker-dealers or agents may be in excess of those customary in the types of transactions involved). In connection with sales of our common shares or otherwise, the selling securityholders may enter into hedging transactions with broker-dealers, which may in turn engage in short sales of our common shares in the course of hedging in positions they assume. The selling securityholders may also sell our common shares short and deliver our common shares covered by this prospectus to close out short positions and to return borrowed shares in connection with such short sales. The selling securityholders may also loan or pledge our common shares to broker-dealers that in turn may sell such shares.

The selling securityholders may pledge or grant a security interest in some or all of the common shares owned by them and, if they default in the performance of their secured obligations, the pledgees or secured parties may offer and sell our common shares from time to time pursuant to this prospectus or any supplement to this prospectus filed under General Instruction II.L. of Form F-10 under the U.S. Securities Act, amending, if necessary, the list of selling securityholders to include, pursuant to a prospectus amendment or prospectus supplement, the pledgee, transferee or other successors in interest as selling securityholders under this prospectus. The selling securityholders also may transfer and donate our common shares in other circumstances in which case the transferees, donees, pledgees or other successors in interest will be the selling beneficial owners for purposes of this prospectus.

[Table of Contents](#)

The selling securityholders and any broker-dealer participating in the distribution of our common shares may be deemed to be “underwriters” within the meaning of the U.S. Securities Act, and any commission paid, or any discounts or concessions allowed to, any such broker-dealer may be deemed to be underwriting commissions or discounts under the U.S. Securities Act. At the time a particular offering of our common shares is made, a prospectus supplement, if required, will be distributed which will identify the selling securityholders and provide the other information set forth under “Selling Securityholders”, set forth the aggregate amount of our common shares being offered and the terms of the offering, including the name or names of any broker-dealers or agents, any discounts, commissions and other terms constituting compensation from the selling securityholders and any discounts, commissions or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid to broker-dealers.

Under the securities laws of some states, our common shares may be sold in such states only through registered or licensed brokers or dealers. In addition, in some states our common shares may not be sold unless such shares have been registered or qualified for sale in such state or an exemption from registration or qualification is available and is complied with.

There can be no assurance that any securityholder will sell any or all of our common shares registered pursuant to the registration statement, of which this prospectus forms a part.

The selling securityholders and any other person participating in such distribution will be subject to applicable provisions of Canadian securities legislation and the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations thereunder, including, without limitation, Regulation M under the Exchange Act, which may limit the timing of purchases and sales of any of our common shares by the selling securityholders and any other participating person. Regulation M may also restrict the ability of any person engaged in the distribution of our common shares to engage in market-making activities with respect to our common shares. All of the foregoing may affect the marketability of our common shares and the ability of any person or entity to engage in market-making activities with respect to our common shares.

Once sold under the shelf registration statement, of which this prospectus forms a part, our common shares will be freely tradable in the hands of person other than our affiliates.

AUDITORS, TRANSFER AGENT AND REGISTRAR

KPMG LLP was appointed as our auditor at our annual meeting of shareholders held on June 24, 2015. KPMG LLP is located at 900 – 777 Dunsmuir Street, P.O. Box 10426 Pacific Centre, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada, V7Y 1K3. KPMG LLP has reported on our fiscal 2016 and 2017 audited consolidated financial statements, which have been filed with the securities regulatory authorities and incorporated by reference herein. KPMG LLP is independent with respect to the Company within the meaning of the Rules of Professional Conduct of the Chartered Professional Accountants of British Columbia.

Our transfer agent and the registrar for our common shares in Canada is Computershare Investor Services Inc. located at 100 University Avenue, 8th Floor, Toronto, Ontario, Canada, M5J 2Y1 and, in the United States is Computershare Trust Company, N.A. located at 1011-250 Royall Street, Canton, Massachusetts, USA 02021.

AGENT FOR SERVICE OF PROCESS

Each of Lota Zoth, Kenneth J. Hillan, Hollings C. Renton and Natalie Sacks (collectively, the “Non-Canadian Directors”), reside outside of Canada and has appointed the following agent for service of process in Canada:

<u>Name of Person</u>	<u>Name and Address of Agent</u>
Non-Canadian Directors	Blake, Cassels & Graydon LLP Suite 2600, 595 Burrard Street, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada

Purchasers are advised that it may not be possible for investors to enforce judgments obtained in Canada against any person or company that is incorporated, continued or otherwise organized under the laws of a foreign jurisdiction or resides outside of Canada, even if the party has appointed an agent for service of process.

LEGAL MATTERS

Certain legal matters related to our securities offered by this prospectus will be passed upon on our behalf by Blake, Cassels & Graydon LLP, with respect to matters of Canadian law, and Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher & Flom LLP, with respect to matters of U.S. law. As of the date of this prospectus, the partners and associates of Blake, Cassels & Graydon LLP beneficially own, directly or indirectly, less than 1% of our outstanding common shares.

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We are required to file with the securities commission or authority in each of the provinces and territories of Canada annual and quarterly reports, material change reports and other information. In addition, we are subject to the informational requirements of the Exchange Act, and, in accordance with the Exchange Act, we also file reports with, and furnish other information to, the SEC. Under a multijurisdictional disclosure system adopted by the United States and Canada, these reports and other information (including financial information) may be prepared in accordance with the disclosure requirements of Canada, which differ in certain respects from those in the United States. As a foreign private issuer, we are exempt from the rules under the Exchange Act prescribing the furnishing and content of proxy statements, and our officers, directors and principal shareholders are exempt from the reporting and short-swing profit recovery provisions contained in Section 16 of the Exchange Act. In addition, we are not required to publish financial statements as promptly as U.S. companies.

You may read any document we file with or furnish to the securities commissions and authorities of the provinces and territories of Canada through SEDAR and any document we file with, or furnish to, the SEC at the SEC's public reference room at Station Place, 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. Please call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information on the public reference rooms. Certain of our filings are also electronically available on EDGAR, and may be accessed at www.sec.gov.

ENFORCEABILITY OF CIVIL LIABILITIES

We are a corporation existing under the BCBCA. Most of our officers, some of our directors and the experts named in this prospectus, are residents of Canada or otherwise reside outside the United States, and all or a substantial portion of their assets may be, and a substantial portion of the Company's assets are, located outside the United States. We have appointed an agent for service of process in the United States (as set forth below), but it may be difficult for holders of securities who reside in the United States to effect service within the United States upon those directors, officers and experts who are not residents of the United States. It may also be difficult for holders of securities who reside in the United States to realize in the United States upon judgments of courts of the United States predicated upon our civil liability and the civil liability of our directors, officers and experts under United States federal securities laws. We have been advised that a judgment of a U.S. court predicated solely upon civil liability under U.S. federal securities laws or the securities or "blue sky" laws of any state within the United States, would likely be enforceable in Canada if the United States court in which the judgment was obtained has a basis for jurisdiction in the matter that would be recognized by a Canadian court for the same purposes. We have also been advised, however, that there is substantial doubt whether an action could be brought in Canada in the first instance on the basis of the liability predicated solely upon U.S. federal securities laws.

We filed with the SEC, concurrently with our registration statement on Form F-10 of which this prospectus is a part, an appointment of agent for service of process on Form F-X. Under the Form F-X, we appointed The Corporation Trust Company, Corporation Trust Center, 1209 Orange Street, Wilmington, Delaware, 19801 as our agent for service of process in the United States in connection with any investigation or administrative proceeding conducted by the SEC, and any civil suit or action brought against or involving us in a U.S. court arising out of or related to or concerning the offering of securities under this prospectus.

PART II

INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED TO BE DELIVERED TO OFFEREES OR PURCHASERS

Indemnification.

Under the BCBCA, we may indemnify an individual who:

- a) is or was our director or officer;
- b) is or was a director or officer (1) at our request, or (2) of another corporation at the time when such corporation is or was an affiliate of ours; or
- c) at our request, is or was, or holds or held a position equivalent to that of a director or officer of a partnership, trust, joint venture or other unincorporated entity, against a judgment, penalty or fine awarded or imposed in, or an amount paid in settlement of, any legal proceeding or investigative action, whether current, threatened, pending or completed, in which such eligible party is involved because of that association with us or other entity.

However, indemnification is prohibited under the BCBCA if:

- a) such eligible party did not act honestly and in good faith with a view to our best interests (or the other entity, as the case may be);
- b) in the case of a proceeding other than a civil proceeding, such eligible party did not have reasonable grounds for believing that such person's conduct was lawful;
- c) the indemnity or payment is made under an earlier agreement to indemnify or pay expenses and, at the time that the agreement to indemnify or pay expenses was made, we were prohibited from giving the indemnity or paying the expenses by our articles; or
- d) the indemnity or payment is made otherwise than under an earlier agreement to indemnify or pay expenses and, at the time that the indemnity or payment is made, we were prohibited from giving the indemnity or paying the expenses by our articles.

We may not indemnify or pay the expenses of an eligible party in respect of an action brought against an eligible party by or on behalf of us.

The BCBCA allows us to pay, as they are incurred in advance of a final disposition of a proceeding, the expenses actually and reasonably incurred by the eligible party, provided that we receive from such eligible party an undertaking to repay the amounts advanced if it is ultimately determined that such payment is prohibited. Following the final disposition of an eligible proceeding, the BCBCA requires us to pay the expenses actually and reasonably incurred by the eligible party in respect of that proceeding if the eligible party has not been reimbursed for those expenses and is wholly successful, on the merits or otherwise, in the outcome of the proceeding, or is substantially successful on the merits in the outcome of the proceeding.

Despite the foregoing, on application by us or an eligible party, a court may:

- a) order us to indemnify an eligible party in respect of an eligible proceeding;
- b) order us to pay some or all of the expenses incurred by an eligible party in an eligible proceeding;
- c) order enforcement of or any payment under an indemnification agreement;
- d) order us to pay some or all of the expenses actually and reasonably incurred by a person in obtaining the order of the court; and
- e) make any other order the court considers appropriate.

[Table of Contents](#)

The BCBCA provides that we may purchase and maintain insurance for the benefit of an eligible party (or their heirs and personal or other legal representatives of the eligible party) against any liability that may be incurred by reason of the eligible party being or having been a director or officer, or in an equivalent position of ours or that of an associated corporation.

Our articles provide that we will indemnify any of our directors, former directors, officers, and former officers and other parties specified by the articles against all costs, charges, and expenses, including an amount paid to settle an action or satisfy a judgment, reasonably incurred by them for any civil, criminal or administrative action or proceeding to which they are or may be made a party by reason of having been a director or officer.

We have entered into indemnity agreements with certain of our officers and directors, pursuant to which we are obligated to indemnify and hold harmless such persons against all costs, charges, and expenses, including any amounts paid to settle actions or satisfy judgments, reasonably incurred by them in respect of any civil, criminal, administrative, investigative, or other proceeding to which they are made a party by reason of being or having been an officer or director. However, such indemnification obligations arise only to the extent that the party seeking indemnification was acting honestly and in good faith with a view to our best interests, and, in the case of criminal or administrative actions or proceedings enforced by monetary penalties, that such person had reasonable grounds for believing that his or her conduct was lawful. Under the indemnity agreements, we may advance to the indemnified parties the expenses incurred in defending any such actions or proceedings, but if the director or officer does not meet the conditions to qualify for indemnification, such amounts shall be repaid.

As permitted by the BCBCA, the Registrant has purchased directors' and officers' liability insurance that, under certain circumstances, insures its directors and officers against the costs of defense, settlement, or payment of a judgment.

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers or persons controlling the Registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, the Registrant has been informed that in the opinion of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC") such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act of 1933 and is therefore unenforceable.

Table of Contents

Exhibits

The following exhibits have been filed as part of the Registration Statement:

<u>Exhibit No.</u>	<u>Description</u>
4.1	Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017 filed with the SEC on March 14, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).
4.2	Audited consolidated financial statements as at and for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017, together with the notes thereto and the auditor's report thereon (incorporated by reference to Item 8 of our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017 filed with the SEC on March 14, 2018 (File No. 001-38068)).
4.3	Management's discussion and analysis of the financial condition and results of operations for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017 (incorporated by reference to Item 7 of our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017 filed with the SEC on March 14, 2018 (File No. 001-38068)).
4.4	Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the three month period ended March 31, 2018 filed with the SEC on May 1, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).
4.5	Unaudited interim consolidated financial statements as at and for the three months ended March 31, 2018, together with the notes thereto (incorporated by reference to Item 1 of our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed with the SEC on May 1, 2018 (File No. 001-38068)).
4.6	Management's discussion and analysis of the financial condition and results of operations for the three months ended March 31, 2018 (incorporated by reference to Item 2 of our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed with the SEC on May 1, 2018 (File No. 001-38068)).
4.7*	Material change report dated March 20, 2018 with respect to our announcement that ZW49 is the first product candidate selected for clinical development using the ZymeLink antibody-drug conjugate platform.
4.8*	Material change report, dated April 17, 2018, with respect to our presentation of preclinical data on ZW49.
4.9*	Material change report, dated April 24, 2018 with respect to Celgene Corporation having exercised its right to expand its collaboration agreement for the research, development, and commercialization of bispecific antibody therapeutics using Zymeworks' Azymetric platform.
4.10*	Material change report, dated April 25, 2018, with respect to our announcement that the abstract highlighting new data from our adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial for ZW25 has been selected for an oral presentation at the American Society of Clinical Oncology.
4.11	Current Report on Form 8-K, dated March 14, 2018 filed with the SEC on March 14, 2018 (File No. 001-38068) (including Exhibit 99.1 thereto, which is deemed filed under the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and is incorporated by reference into this Registration Statement).
4.12	Current Report on Form 8-K, dated April 17, 2018 filed with the SEC on April 18, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).
4.13	Current Report on Form 8-K, dated April 23, 2018 filed with the SEC on April 23, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).
4.14	Current Report on Form 8-K, dated April 25, 2018 filed with the SEC on April 25, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).

Table of Contents

<u>Exhibit No.</u>	<u>Description</u>
4.15	Current Report on Form 8-K, dated April 30, 2018 filed with the SEC on April 30, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).
4.16	Current Report on Form 8-K, dated May 1, 2018 filed with the SEC on May 1, 2018 (File No. 001-38068) (including Exhibit 99.1 thereto, which is deemed filed under the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and is incorporated by reference into this Registration Statement).
4.17	Current Report on Form 8-K, dated May 10, 2018 filed with the SEC on May 10, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).
4.18	Current Report on Form 8-K, dated May 16, 2018 filed with the SEC on May 16, 2018 (File No. 001-38068) (including Exhibit 99.1 thereto, which is deemed filed under the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and is incorporated by reference into this Registration Statement).
4.19	Current Report on Form 8-K, dated May 14, 2018 filed with the SEC on May 18, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).
5.1**	Consent of KPMG LLP.
6.1*	Powers of Attorney.
7.1**	Form of Indenture.

* Previously filed.

** Filed herewith.

PART III

UNDERTAKING AND CONSENT TO SERVICE OF PROCESS

Item 1. Undertaking.

The Registrant undertakes to make available, in person or by telephone, representatives to respond to inquiries made by the Commission staff, and to furnish promptly, when requested to do so by the Commission staff, information relating to the securities registered pursuant to Form F-10 or to transactions in such securities.

Item 2. Consent to Service of Process.

(a) The Registrant has previously filed with the Commission a written irrevocable consent and power of attorney on Form F-X.

(b) Pursuant to Section 305(b)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, the Registrant will designate at a later date a Canadian trustee (the "Canadian Trustee") under the indenture included as Exhibit 7.1 hereto, and will cause the Canadian Trustee to file with the Commission at such later date a written irrevocable consent and power of attorney on Form F-X.

(c) Pursuant to Section 305(b)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, the Registrant will designate at a later date a U.S. trustee (the "U.S. Trustee") under the indenture included as Exhibit 7.1 hereto, and will file at such later date an application for determining the U.S. Trustee's eligibility under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended.

(d) Any change to the name or address of the Registrant's and the Canadian Trustee's agent for service of process shall be communicated promptly to the Commission by amendment to Form F-X referencing the file number of this Registration Statement.

EXHIBIT INDEX

<u>Exhibit No.</u>	<u>Description</u>
4.1	Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017 filed with the SEC on March 14, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).
4.2	Audited consolidated financial statements as at and for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017, together with the notes thereto and the auditor's report thereon (incorporated by reference to Item 8 of our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017 filed with the SEC on March 14, 2018 (File No. 001-38068)).
4.3	Management's discussion and analysis of the financial condition and results of operations for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017 (incorporated by reference to Item 7 of our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017 filed with the SEC on March 14, 2018 (File No. 001-38068)).
4.4	Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the three month period ended March 31, 2018 filed with the SEC on May 1, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).
4.5	Unaudited interim consolidated financial statements as at and for the three months ended March 31, 2018, together with the notes thereto (incorporated by reference to Item 1 of our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed with the SEC on May 1, 2018 (File No. 001-38068)).
4.6	Management's discussion and analysis of the financial condition and results of operations for the three months ended March 31, 2018 (incorporated by reference to Item 2 of our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed with the SEC on May 1, 2018 (File No. 001-38068)).
4.7*	Material change report dated March 20, 2018 with respect to our announcement that ZW49 is the first product candidate selected for clinical development using the ZymeLink antibody-drug conjugate platform.
4.8*	Material change report, dated April 17, 2018, with respect to our presentation of preclinical data on ZW49.
4.9*	Material change report, dated April 24, 2018 with respect to Celgene Corporation having exercised its right to expand its collaboration agreement for the research, development, and commercialization of bispecific antibody therapeutics using Zymeworks' Azymetric platform.
4.10*	Material change report, dated April 25, 2018, with respect to our announcement that the abstract highlighting new data from our adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial for ZW25 has been selected for an oral presentation at the American Society of Clinical Oncology.
4.11	Current Report on Form 8-K, dated March 14, 2018 filed with the SEC on March 14, 2018 (File No. 001-38068) (including Exhibit 99.1 thereto, which is deemed filed under the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and is incorporated by reference into this Registration Statement).
4.12	Current Report on Form 8-K, dated April 17, 2018 filed with the SEC on April 18, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).
4.13	Current Report on Form 8-K, dated April 23, 2018 filed with the SEC on April 23, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).
4.14	Current Report on Form 8-K, dated April 25, 2018 filed with the SEC on April 25, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).
4.15	Current Report on Form 8-K, dated April 30, 2018 filed with the SEC on April 30, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).

Table of Contents

<u>Exhibit No.</u>	<u>Description</u>
4.16	<u>Current Report on Form 8-K, dated May 1, 2018 filed with the SEC on May 1, 2018 (File No. 001-38068) (including Exhibit 99.1 thereto, which is deemed filed under the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and is incorporated by reference into this Registration Statement).</u>
4.17	<u>Current Report on Form 8-K, dated May 10, 2018 filed with the SEC on May 10, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).</u>
4.18	<u>Current Report on Form 8-K, dated May 16, 2018 filed with the SEC on May 16, 2018 (File No. 001-38068) (including Exhibit 99.1 thereto, which is deemed filed under the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and is incorporated by reference into this Registration Statement).</u>
4.19	<u>Current Report on Form 8-K, dated May 14, 2018 filed with the SEC on May 18, 2018 (File No. 001-38068).</u>
5.1**	<u>Consent of KPMG LLP.</u>
6.1*	<u>Powers of Attorney.</u>
7.1**	<u>Form of Indenture.</u>

* Previously-filed.

** Filed herewith.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the Registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form F-10 and has duly caused this Amendment No. 1 to the Registration Statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the city of Vancouver, British Columbia on May 18, 2018.

ZYMEWORKS INC.

By: /s/ Ali Tehrani

Name: Ali Tehrani

Title: President and Chief Executive Officer

[Table of Contents](#)

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this Amendment No. 1 to the Registration Statement has been signed below by or on behalf of the following persons in the capacities indicated on May 18, 2018.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>
<u>/s/ Ali Tehrani</u>	Ali Tehrani Director, President and Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer)
<u>/s/ Neil Klompas</u>	Neil Klompas Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)
<u>*</u>	Nick Bedford Director, Chair of the Board of Directors
<u>*</u>	Kenneth Hillan Director
<u>*</u>	Hollings Renton Director
<u>*</u>	Natalie Sacks Director
<u>*</u>	Lota Zoth Director

* By: /s/ Neil Klompas
Neil Klompas
Attorney-in-fact



*KPMG LLP
PO Box 10426 777 Dunsmuir Street
Vancouver BC V7Y 1K3
Canada
Telephone (604) 691-3000
Fax (604) 691-3031*

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

The Board of Directors
Zymeworks Inc.

We consent to the incorporation by reference in this Registration Statement on Form F-10 of Zymeworks Inc. (No. 333-224623) of our report dated March 14, 2018, with respect to the consolidated balance sheets of Zymeworks Inc. at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 and the related consolidated statements of loss and comprehensive loss, changes in redeemable convertible preferred shares and shareholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 2017, which are also incorporated by reference herein.

A handwritten signature in black ink that reads 'KPMG LLP' with a horizontal line underneath.

Chartered Professional Accountants
May 18, 2018
Vancouver, Canada

KPMG LLP is a Canadian limited liability partnership and a member firm of the KPMG network of independent member firms affiliated with KPMG International Cooperative ("KPMG International"), a Swiss entity. KPMG Canada provides services to KPMG LLP.

ZYMEWORKS INC.

as Issuer,

as U.S. Trustee

and

as Canadian Trustee

Indenture

Dated as of

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ARTICLE ONE DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION	1
SECTION 1.01 Definitions	1
SECTION 1.02 Compliance Certificates and Opinions	13
SECTION 1.03 Form of Documents Delivered to Trustees	13
SECTION 1.04 Acts of Holders	14
SECTION 1.05 Notices, etc. to Trustees and Company	16
SECTION 1.06 Notice to Holders; Waiver	16
SECTION 1.07 Effect of Headings and Table of Contents	17
SECTION 1.08 Successors and Assigns	17
SECTION 1.09 Severability Clause	17
SECTION 1.10 Benefits of Indenture	17
SECTION 1.11 Governing Law	18
SECTION 1.12 Legal Holidays	18
SECTION 1.13 Agent for Service; Submission to Jurisdiction; Waiver of Immunities	18
SECTION 1.14 Conversion of Currency	19
SECTION 1.15 Currency Equivalent	20
SECTION 1.16 Conflict with Trust Indenture Legislation	20
SECTION 1.17 Incorporators, Shareholders, Officers and Directors of the Company Exempt from Individual Liability	20
ARTICLE TWO SECURITIES FORMS	21
SECTION 2.01 Forms Generally	21
SECTION 2.02 Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication	21
SECTION 2.03 Securities Issuable in Global Form	22
ARTICLE THREE THE SECURITIES	23
SECTION 3.01 Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series	23
SECTION 3.02 Denominations	27
SECTION 3.03 Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating	27
SECTION 3.04 Temporary Securities	29
SECTION 3.05 Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange	32
SECTION 3.06 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities	36
SECTION 3.07 Payment of Principal; Premium; Interest; Interest Rights Preserved; Optional Interest Reset	37
SECTION 3.08 Optional Extension of Stated Maturity	39
SECTION 3.09 Persons Deemed Owners	40
SECTION 3.10 Cancellation	41
SECTION 3.11 Computation of Interest	41
SECTION 3.12 Currency and Manner of Payments in Respect of Securities	41
SECTION 3.13 Appointment and Resignation of Successor Exchange Rate Agent	45
ARTICLE FOUR SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE	45
SECTION 4.01 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture	45
SECTION 4.02 Application of Trust Money	46

ARTICLE FIVE REMEDIES	47
SECTION 5.01 Events of Default	47
SECTION 5.02 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment	49
SECTION 5.03 Collection of Debt and Suits for Enforcement by Trustees	50
SECTION 5.04 Trustees May File Proofs of Claim	50
SECTION 5.05 Trustees May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities	51
SECTION 5.06 Application of Money Collected	51
SECTION 5.07 Limitation on Suits	52
SECTION 5.08 Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest	53
SECTION 5.09 Restoration of Rights and Remedies	53
SECTION 5.10 Rights and Remedies Cumulative	53
SECTION 5.11 Delay or Omission Not Waiver	53
SECTION 5.12 Control by Holders	53
SECTION 5.13 Waiver of Past Defaults	54
SECTION 5.14 Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws	54
SECTION 5.15 Undertaking for Costs	55
ARTICLE SIX THE TRUSTEES	55
SECTION 6.01 Notice of Defaults	55
SECTION 6.02 Certain Duties and Responsibilities of Trustees	55
SECTION 6.03 Certain Rights of Trustees	57
SECTION 6.04 Trustees Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities	58
SECTION 6.05 May Hold Securities	58
SECTION 6.06 Money Held in Trust	58
SECTION 6.07 Compensation and Reimbursement	59
SECTION 6.08 Corporate Trustees Required; Eligibility	60
SECTION 6.09 Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor	60
SECTION 6.10 Acceptance of Appointment by Successor	62
SECTION 6.11 Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business	63
SECTION 6.12 Appointment of Authenticating Agent	64
SECTION 6.13 Joint Trustees	66
SECTION 6.14 Other Rights of Trustees	66
ARTICLE SEVEN HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY	68
SECTION 7.01 Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders	68
SECTION 7.02 Preservation of List of Names and Addresses of Holders	68
SECTION 7.03 Disclosure of Names and Addresses of Holders	68
SECTION 7.04 Reports by Trustees	68
SECTION 7.05 Reports by the Company	69
ARTICLE EIGHT CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE	70
SECTION 8.01 Company May Consolidate, etc., only on Certain Terms	70

SECTION 8.02	Successor Person Substituted	70
ARTICLE NINE SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES		71
SECTION 9.01	Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders	71
SECTION 9.02	Supplemental Indentures with Consent of Holders	72
SECTION 9.03	Execution of Supplemental Indentures	73
SECTION 9.04	Effect of Supplemental Indentures	73
SECTION 9.05	Conformity with Trust Indenture Legislation	74
SECTION 9.06	Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures	74
SECTION 9.07	Notice of Supplemental Indentures	74
ARTICLE TEN COVENANTS		74
SECTION 10.01	Payment of Principal, Premium, if any, and Interest	74
SECTION 10.02	Maintenance of Office or Agency	74
SECTION 10.03	Money for Securities Payments to Be Held in Trust	76
SECTION 10.04	Statement as to Compliance	77
SECTION 10.05	Additional Amounts	78
SECTION 10.06	Payment of Taxes and Other Claims	79
SECTION 10.07	Corporate Existence	79
SECTION 10.08	SEC Reporting Obligations	79
SECTION 10.09	Waiver of Certain Covenants	80
ARTICLE ELEVEN REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES		80
SECTION 11.01	Applicability of Article	80
SECTION 11.02	Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustees	80
SECTION 11.03	Selection by Trustees of Securities to Be Redeemed	80
SECTION 11.04	Notice of Redemption	81
SECTION 11.05	Deposit of Redemption Price	82
SECTION 11.06	Securities Payable on Redemption Date	82
SECTION 11.07	Securities Redeemed in Part	83
SECTION 11.08	Tax Redemption	83
ARTICLE TWELVE SINKING FUNDS		84
SECTION 12.01	Applicability of Article	84
SECTION 12.02	Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities	84
SECTION 12.03	Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund	85
ARTICLE THIRTEEN REPAYMENT AT OPTION OF HOLDERS		86
SECTION 13.01	Applicability of Article	86
SECTION 13.02	Repayment of Securities	86
SECTION 13.03	Exercise of Option	86
SECTION 13.04	When Securities Presented for Repayment Become Due and Payable	87
SECTION 13.05	Securities Repaid in Part	88
ARTICLE FOURTEEN DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE		88
SECTION 14.01	Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	88
SECTION 14.02	Defeasance and Discharge	88
SECTION 14.03	Covenant Defeasance	89
SECTION 14.04	Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	89

SECTION 14.05	Deposited Money and Government Obligations to Be Held in Trust; Other Miscellaneous Provisions	91
SECTION 14.06	Reinstatement	92
ARTICLE FIFTEEN	MEETINGS OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES	92
SECTION 15.01	Purposes for Which Meetings May Be Called	92
SECTION 15.02	Call, Notice and Place of Meetings	92
SECTION 15.03	Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings	93
SECTION 15.04	Quorum; Action	93
SECTION 15.05	Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings	94
SECTION 15.06	Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings	95
SECTION 15.07	Waiver of Jury Trial	95
SECTION 15.08	Counterparts	96
SECTION 15.09	Force Majeure	96

CROSS-REFERENCE TABLE

TIA Section	Indenture Section
310 (a)	6.08(a)
(b)	6.09
(c)	Not Applicable
311 (a)	6.05
(b)	6.05
(c)	Not Applicable
312 (a)	7.05
(b)	7.03
(c)	7.03
313 (a)	7.04
(b)	7.04
(c)	7.04
(d)	7.05
314 (a)	7.05
(a)(4)	10.04
(b)	Not Applicable
(c)(1)	1.02
(c)(2)	1.02
(d)	Not Applicable
(e)	1.02
(f)	Not Applicable
315 (a)	6.02
(b)	6.01
(c)	6.02
(d)	6.02
(e)	5.15
316 (a)(last sentence)	1.01 (“Outstanding”)
(a)(1)(A)	5.12
(a)(1)(B)	5.02, 5.13
(a)(2)	Not Applicable
(b)	5.08
(c)	1.04(e)
317 (a)(1)	5.03
(a)(2)	5.04
(b)	10.03
318 (a)	1.16

Note: This Cross-Reference Table shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be part of this Indenture.

INDENTURE, dated as of _____, between ZYMEWORKS INC., a corporation duly continued and existing under the laws of British Columbia (herein called the “Company”), having its principal office at 1385 West 8th Avenue, Suite 540, Vancouver, British Columbia, V6H 3V9, and _____, a _____, organized under the laws of _____, as U.S. trustee (herein called the “U.S. Trustee”), and _____, as Canadian trustee (the “Canadian Trustee” and, together with the U.S. Trustee, the “Trustees”).

RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance from time to time of its unsecured debentures, notes or other evidences of indebtedness (herein called the “Securities”), which may be convertible into or exchangeable for any securities of any person (including the Company), to be issued in one or more series as in this Indenture provided.

This Indenture is subject to the provisions of Trust Indenture Legislation (as defined below) that are required to be part of this Indenture and shall, to the extent applicable, be governed by such provisions.

All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, THIS INDENTURE WITNESSETH:

For and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the Holders (as defined below) thereof, it is mutually covenanted and agreed, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities or of series thereof, as follows:

ARTICLE ONE DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION

SECTION 1.01 Definitions.

For all purposes of this Indenture, except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires:

- (1) the terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article and include the plural as well as the singular;
- (2) all other terms used herein which are defined in the Trust Indenture Act, either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them therein, and the terms “cash transaction” and “self-liquidating paper”, as used in Section 319 of the Trust Indenture Act, shall have the meanings assigned to them in the rules of the Commission adopted under the Trust Indenture Act;

- (3) all accounting terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in accordance with United States generally accepted accounting principles, and, except as otherwise herein expressly provided, the term “generally accepted accounting principles” with respect to any computation required or permitted hereunder shall mean such accounting principles as are generally accepted in the United States at the date of such computation;
- (4) the words “herein”, “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision;
- (5) “or” is not exclusive;
- (6) words implying any gender shall apply to all genders; and
- (7) the words Subsection, Section and Article refer to the Subsections, Sections and Articles, respectively, of this Indenture unless otherwise noted.
- (8) “include”, “includes” or “including” means include, includes or including, in each case, without limitation.

Certain terms, used principally in Article Three, are defined in that Article.

“accelerated indebtedness” has the meaning specified in Section 5.01.

“Act”, when used with respect to any Holder, has the meaning specified in Section 1.04.

“Additional Amounts” has the meaning specified in Section 10.05.

“Affiliate” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing.

“Appropriate Trustee” means, with respect to the Canadian Securities, the Canadian Trustee, and with respect to the U.S. Securities, the U.S. Trustee.

“Authenticating Agent” means any Person authorized by either Trustee pursuant to Section 6.12 to act on behalf of such Trustee to authenticate Securities.

“Authorized Newspaper” means a newspaper, in the English language or in an official language of the country of publication, customarily published on each Business Day, and of general circulation in each place in connection with which the term is used or in the financial community of each such place. Where successive publications are required to be made in Authorized Newspapers, the successive publications may be made in the same or in different newspapers in the same city meeting the foregoing requirements and in each case on any Business Day.

“Base Currency” has the meaning specified in Section 1.14.

“Bearer Security” means any Security except a Registered Security.

“Board of Directors” means either the board of directors of the Company or any duly authorized committee of such board.

“Board Resolution” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Corporate Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the Trustees.

“Branch Register” has the meaning specified in Section 3.05.

“Branch Security Registrar” has the meaning specified in Section 3.05.

“Business Day”, when used with respect to any Place of Payment or any other particular location referred to in this Indenture or in the Securities, means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, any day other than Saturday, Sunday or any other day on which commercial banking institutions in that Place of Payment or other location are permitted or required by any applicable law, regulation or executive order to close.

“calculation period” has the meaning specified in Section 3.11.

“Canadian Securities Authorities” means the securities commissions or similar authorities in Canada.

“Canadian Taxes” has the meaning specified in Section 10.05.

“Canadian Trustee” means the Person named as the “Canadian Trustee” in the first paragraph of this Indenture until a successor Canadian Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Canadian Trustee” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Canadian Trustee hereunder; provided, however, that if at any time there is more than one such Person, “Canadian Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean only the Canadian Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

“Capital Stock” in any Person means any and all shares, interests, partnership interests, participations or other equivalents however designated in the equity interest in such Person and any rights (other than debt securities convertible into an equity interest), warrants or options to acquire any equity interest in such Person.

“CBCA” means the Canada Business Corporations Act, as amended.

“Central Register” has the meaning specified in Section 3.05.

“Central Security Registrar” has the meaning specified in Section 3.05.

“Clearstream” means Clearstream Banking, societe anonyme, or its successor.

“Commission” means the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, as from time to time constituted, created under the Exchange Act, or, if at any time after the execution of this Indenture such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties at such time.

“Common Depositary” has the meaning specified in Section 3.04.

“Company” means the Person named as the “Company” in the first paragraph of this Indenture until a successor Person shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Company” shall mean such successor Person.

“Company Request” or “Company Order” means a written request or order signed in the name of the Company by the Chairman of the Board of Directors, a Vice Chairman of the Board of Directors, the President, the Chief Executive Officer, or the Chief Business Officer, or if two or more persons share such office any one of such persons, and by the Chief Financial Officer, the Chief Accounting Officer, the Corporate Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company, or if two or more persons share such office any one of such persons, and delivered to the Trustees.

“Component Currency” has the meaning specified in Section 3.12(h).

“Conversion Date” has the meaning specified in Section 3.12(d).

“Conversion Event” means the cessation of use of (i) a Foreign Currency (other than the Euro or other currency unit both by the government of the country which issued such Currency and by a central bank or other public institution of or within the international banking community for the settlement of transactions, (ii) the Euro or (iii) any currency unit (or composite currency) other than the Euro for the purposes for which it was established.

“Corporate Trust Office” means a corporate trust office of the U.S. Trustee or the Canadian Trustee, as applicable, at which at any particular time its corporate trust business may be administered, such an office on the date of execution of this Indenture of the U.S. Trustee is located at _____, Attention: _____, and of the Canadian Trustee is located at _____, Attention: _____, except that with respect to presentation of Securities for payment or for registration of transfer or exchange, such term shall mean the office or agency of the U.S. Trustee or the Canadian Trustee, as applicable, designated in writing to the Company at which, at any particular time, its corporate agency business shall be conducted.

“corporation” includes corporations, associations, companies and business trusts.

“coupon” means any interest coupon appertaining to a Bearer Security.

“covenant defeasance” has the meaning specified in Section 14.03.

“Currency” means any currency or currencies, composite currency or currency unit or currency units, including, without limitation, the Euro, issued by the government of one or more countries or by any recognized confederation or association of such governments.

“Debt” means notes, bonds, debentures or other similar evidences of indebtedness for money borrowed.

“Default” means any event which is, or after notice or passage of time or both would be, an Event of Default.

“Defaulted Interest” has the meaning specified in Section 3.07.

“defeasance” has the meaning specified in Section 14.02.

“Depository” means with respect to the Securities of any series issuable or issued in the form of one or more Registered Securities, the Person designated as Depository by the Company pursuant to Section 3.05 until a successor Depository shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Depository” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Depository hereunder, and, if at any time there is more than one such Person, “Depository” as used with respect to the Securities of any such series shall mean the Depository with respect to the Registered Securities of that series.

“Dollar” or “\$” means a dollar or other equivalent unit in such coin or currency of the United States of America as at the time shall be legal tender for the payment of public and private debts.

“Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit” has the meaning specified in Section 3.12(g).

“Dollar Equivalent of the Foreign Currency” has the meaning specified in Section 3.12(f).

“Election Date” has the meaning specified in Section 3.12(h).

“Euro” means the single currency of the participating member states from time to time of the European Union described in legislation of the European Council for the operation of a single unified European currency (whether known as the Euro or otherwise).

“Euroclear” means Morgan Guaranty Trust Company of New York, Brussels Office, or its successor as operator of the Euroclear System.

“Event of Default” has the meaning specified in Section 5.01.

“Exchange Act” means the United States Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

“Exchange Date” has the meaning specified in Section 3.04.

“Exchange Rate Agent” means, with respect to Securities of or within any series, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, a New York clearing house bank, designated pursuant to Section 3.01 or Section 3.13.

“Exchange Rate Officers’ Certificate” means a tested telex or a certificate setting forth (i) the applicable Market Exchange Rate and (ii) the Dollar or Foreign Currency amounts of principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any (on an aggregate basis and on the basis of a Security having the lowest denomination principal amount determined in accordance with Section 3.02 in the relevant Currency), payable with respect to a Security of any series on the basis of such Market Exchange Rate, sent (in the case of a telex) or signed (in the case of a certificate) by the Chief Executive Officer, President or Chief Financial Officer of the Company.

“Exchanges” means the New York Stock Exchange and The Toronto Stock Exchange and any other securities exchange or automated quotation system upon which the Securities are or become listed or quoted.

“Excluded Holder” has the meaning specified in Section 10.05.

“Extension Notice” has the meaning specified in Section 3.08.

“Extension Period” has the meaning specified in Section 3.08.

“Final Maturity” has the meaning specified in Section 3.08.

“First Currency” has the meaning specified in Section 1.15.

“Foreign Currency” means any Currency other than Currency of the United States.

“GAAP” means generally accepted accounting principles in Canada in effect from time to time, unless the Person’s most recent audited or quarterly financial statements are not prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in Canada, in which case “GAAP” shall mean generally accepted accounting principles in the United States in effect from time to time.

“Government Obligations” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any series of Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, securities which are (i) direct obligations of the government which issued the Currency in which the Securities of a particular series are payable or (ii) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the government which issued the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable, the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed by such government, which, in either case, are full faith and credit obligations of such government payable in such Currency and are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank or trust company as custodian with respect to any such Government Obligation or a specific payment of interest on or principal of any such Government Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of a depository receipt; provided that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the Government Obligation or the specific payment of interest or principal of the Government Obligation evidenced by such depository receipt.

“Holder” means, in the case of a Registered Security, the Person in whose name a Security is registered in the Security Register and, in the case of a Bearer Security, the bearer thereof and, when used with respect to any coupon, shall mean the bearer thereof.

“Indenture” means this instrument as originally executed and as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof, and shall include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by Section 3.01; provided, however, that, if at any time more than one Person is acting as Trustee under this instrument, “Indenture” shall mean, with respect to any one or more series of Securities for which such Person is Trustee, this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof and shall include the terms of the particular series of Securities for which such Person is Trustee established as contemplated by Section 3.01, exclusive, however, of any provisions or terms which relate solely to other series of Securities for which such Person is not Trustee, regardless of when such terms or provisions were adopted, and exclusive of any provisions or terms adopted by means of one or more indentures supplemental hereto executed and delivered after such Person had become such Trustee but to which such Person, as such Trustee, was not a party.

“Indexed Security” means a Security the terms of which provide that the principal amount thereof payable at Stated Maturity may be more or less than the principal face amount thereof at original issuance.

“interest”, when used with respect to an Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity at the rate prescribed in such Original Issue Discount Security.

“Interest Payment Date”, when used with respect to any Security, means the Stated Maturity of an installment of interest on such Security.

“Judgment Currency” has the meaning specified in Section 1.14.

“Lien” means any mortgage, pledge, hypothecation, charge, assignment, deposit arrangement, encumbrance, security interest, lien (statutory or other), or preference, priority or other security or similar agreement or preferential arrangement of any kind or nature whatsoever (including, without limitation, any agreement to give or grant a Lien or any lease, conditional sale or other title retention agreement having substantially the same economic effect as any of the foregoing).

“mandatory sinking fund payment” has the meaning specified in Section 12.01.

“Market Exchange Rate” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, (i) for any conversion involving a currency unit on the one hand and Dollars or any Foreign Currency on the other, the exchange rate between the relevant currency unit and Dollars or such Foreign Currency calculated by the method specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of the relevant series, (ii) for any conversion of Dollars into any Foreign Currency, the noon (New York City time) buying rate for such Foreign Currency for cable transfers quoted in New York City as certified for customs purposes by the Federal Reserve Bank of New York and (iii) for any conversion of one Foreign Currency into Dollars or another Foreign Currency, the spot rate at noon local time in the relevant market at which, in accordance with normal banking procedures, the Dollars or Foreign Currency into which conversion is being made could be purchased with the Foreign Currency from which conversion is being made from major banks located in New York City, Toronto, London or any other principal market for Dollars or such purchased Foreign Currency, in each case determined by the Exchange Rate Agent. Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, in the event of the unavailability of any of the exchange rates provided for in the foregoing clauses (i), (ii) and (iii), the Exchange Rate Agent shall use, in its sole discretion and without liability on its part, such quotation of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York as of the most recent available date, or quotations from one or more major banks in New York City, Toronto, London or another principal market for the Currency in question, or such other quotations as the Exchange Rate Agent shall deem appropriate. Unless otherwise specified by the Exchange Rate Agent, if there is more than one market for dealing in any Currency by reason of foreign exchange regulations or otherwise, the market to be used in respect of such Currency shall be that upon which a non-resident issuer of securities designated in such Currency would purchase such Currency in order to make payments in respect of such securities.

“Maturity”, when used with respect to any Security, means the date on which the principal of such Security or an installment of principal becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, notice of redemption, notice of option to elect repayment or otherwise.

“Non-Recourse Debt” means indebtedness to finance the creation, development, construction or acquisition of assets and any increases in or extensions, renewals or refinancings of such indebtedness, provided that the recourse of the lender thereof (including any agent, trustee, receiver or other Person acting on behalf of such entity) in respect of such indebtedness is limited in all circumstances to the assets created, developed, constructed or acquired in respect of which such indebtedness has been incurred and to the receivables, inventory, equipment, chattels payable, contracts, intangibles and other assets, rights or collateral connected with the assets created, developed, constructed or acquired and to which such lender has recourse.

“Notice of Default” has the meaning specified in Section 5.01.

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate, which shall comply with this Indenture, signed by the Chairman of the Board of Directors, a Vice Chairman of the Board of Directors, the President, the Chief Executive Officer, or the Chief Business Officer, or if two or more persons share such office any one of such persons, and by the Chief Financial Officer, the Chief Accounting Officer, the Corporate Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company, or if two or more persons share such office any one of such persons, and delivered to the Trustees.

“Opinion of Counsel” means a written opinion of counsel, who may be counsel for the Company, including an employee of the Company.

“Optional Reset Date” has the meaning specified in Section 3.07.

“optional sinking fund payment” has the meaning specified in Section 12.01.

“Original Issue Discount Security” means any Security which provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.02.

“Original Stated Maturity” has the meaning specified in Section 3.08.

“Other Currency” has the meaning specified in Section 1.15.

“Outstanding”, when used with respect to Securities, means, as of the date of determination, all Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, except:

- (i) Securities theretofore cancelled by a Trustee or delivered to a Trustee for cancellation;
- (ii) Securities, or portions thereof, for whose payment or redemption or repayment at the option of the Holder, money in the necessary amount has been theretofore deposited with a Trustee or any Paying Agent (other than the Company) in trust or set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own Paying Agent) for the Holders of such Securities and any coupons appertaining thereto; provided that, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor satisfactory to the Trustees has been made;
- (iii) Securities, except to the extent provided in Sections 14.02 and 14.03, with respect to which the Company has effected defeasance and/or covenant defeasance as provided in Article Fourteen; and
- (iv) Securities which have been paid pursuant to Section 3.06 or in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, other than any such Securities in respect of which there shall have been presented to the Trustees proof satisfactory to them that such Securities are held by a protected purchaser (as defined in Article 8 of the UCC) in whose hands such Securities are valid obligations of the Company;

provided, however, that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of the Outstanding Securities have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder or are present at a meeting of Holders for quorum purposes, and for the purpose of making the calculations required by TIA Section 313, (i) the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security that may be counted in making such determination or calculation and that shall be deemed to be Outstanding for such purpose shall be equal to the amount of principal thereof that would be (or shall have been declared to be) due and payable, at the time of such determination, upon a declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.02, (ii) the principal amount of any Security denominated in a Foreign Currency that may be counted in making such determination or calculation and that shall be deemed Outstanding for such purpose shall be equal to the Dollar equivalent, determined as of the date such Security is originally issued by the Company as set forth in an Exchange Rate Officers’ Certificate delivered to the Trustees, of the principal amount (or, in the case of an Original Issue Discount Security, the Dollar equivalent as of such date of original issuance of the amount determined as provided in clause (i) above) of such Security, (iii) the principal amount of any Indexed Security that may be counted in making such determination or calculation and that shall be deemed outstanding for such purpose shall be equal to the principal face amount of such Indexed Security at original issuance, unless otherwise provided with respect to such Security pursuant to Section 3.01, and (iv) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding, except that, in determining whether the Trustees shall be protected in making such calculation or in relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver, only Securities which the Trustees know to be so owned shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned which have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustees the pledgee’s right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or such other obligor.

“Paying Agent” means any Person (including the Company acting as Paying Agent) authorized by the Company to pay the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Securities on behalf of the Company. Such Person, at the responsibility of the Company, must be able to make payment in the currency of the issued Security.

“Person” means any individual, corporation, body corporate, partnership, joint venture, limited liability company, association, joint-stock company, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

“Place of Payment” means, when used with respect to the Securities of or within any series, each place where the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on such Securities are payable in the United States and Canada as specified as contemplated by Sections 3.01 and 10.02.

“Predecessor Security” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any security authenticated and delivered under Section 3.06 in exchange for or in lieu of a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security or a Security to which a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen coupon appertains shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security or the Security to which the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen coupon appertains, as the case may be.

“rate(s) of exchange” has the meaning specified in Section 1.14.

“Redemption Date”, when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, in whole or in part, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture.

“Redemption Price”, when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, in whole or in part, means the price at which it is to be redeemed pursuant to this Indenture, plus accrued and unpaid interest thereon to the Redemption Date.

“Registered Security” means any Security registered in the Security Register.

“Regular Record Date” for the interest payable on any Interest Payment Date on the Registered Securities of or within any series means the date specified for that purpose as contemplated by Section 3.01.

“Repayment Date” means, when used with respect to any Security to be repaid at the option of the Holder, the date fixed for such repayment pursuant to this Indenture.

“Repayment Price” means, when used with respect to any Security to be repaid at the option of the Holder, the price at which it is to be repaid pursuant to this Indenture.

“Reset Notice” has the meaning specified in Section 3.07.

“Responsible Officer”, when used with respect to a Trustee, means any vice president, secretary, any assistant secretary, treasurer, any assistant treasurer, any senior trust officer, any trust officer, the controller within the corporate trust administration division of a Trustee or any other officer of a Trustee customarily performing functions similar to those performed by any of the above-designated officers, and also means, with respect to a particular corporate trust matter, any other officer to whom such matter is referred because of his knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

“Securities” has the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and more particularly means any Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture; provided, however, that if at any time there is more than one Person acting as Trustee under this Indenture, “Securities” with respect to the Indenture as to which such Person is Trustee shall have the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and shall more particularly mean Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, exclusive, however, of Securities of any series as to which such Person is not Trustee.

“Security Register” and “Security Registrar” have the respective meanings specified in Section 3.05.

“Shareholders’ Equity” means the aggregate amount of shareholders’ equity of the Company as shown on the most recent audited annual consolidated balance sheet of the Company and computed in accordance with GAAP.

“Special Record Date” for the payment of any Defaulted Interest on the Registered Securities of or within any series means a date fixed by the Trustees pursuant to Section 3.07.

“Specified Amount” has the meaning specified in Section 3.12(h).

“Stated Maturity”, when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date specified in such Security or a coupon representing such installment of interest as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable, as such date may be extended pursuant to the provisions of Section 3.08.

“Subsequent Interest Period” has the meaning specified in Section 3.07.

“Subsidiary” means, any corporation of which at the time of determination the Company, directly and/or indirectly through one or more Subsidiaries, owns more than 50% of the shares of Voting Stock or partnership, joint venture, limited liability company, association, company or business trust interests.

“Trust Indenture Act” or “TIA” means the United States Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, as in force at the date as of which this Indenture was executed, except as provided in Section 9.05.

“Trust Indenture Legislation” means, at any time, the provisions of (i) the CBCA and the regulations thereunder as amended or re-enacted from time to time, but only to the extent applicable, (ii) the provisions of any other applicable statute of Canada or any province thereof and the regulations thereunder as amended or re-enacted from time to time, but only to the extent applicable, or (iii) the Trust Indenture Act and regulations thereunder, in each case, relating to trust indentures and to the rights, duties and obligations of trustees under trust indentures and of corporations issuing debt obligations under trust indentures, to the extent that such provisions are at such time in force and applicable to this Indenture or the Company or the Trustees.

“Trustee” or “Trustees” means the U.S. Trustee and the Canadian Trustee. If a Canadian Trustee is not appointed under this Indenture, or resigns or is removed and, pursuant to Section 6.09, the Company is not required to appoint a successor Trustee to the Canadian Trustee, “Trustee”, “Trustees” and any reference to “either Trustee”, “both of the Trustees” or such similar references shall mean the Person named as the U.S. Trustee or any successor thereto appointed pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture. Except to the extent otherwise indicated, “Trustees” shall refer to the Canadian Trustee (if appointed and still serving) and the U.S. Trustee, both jointly and individually.

“UCC” means the New York uniform commercial code in effect from time to time.

“U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code” means the Bankruptcy Act of Title 11 of the United States Code, as amended from time to time.

“U.S. Trustee” means the Person named as the “U.S. Trustee” in the first paragraph of this Indenture until a successor U.S. Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “U.S. Trustee” shall mean or include each Person who is then a U.S. Trustee hereunder; provided, however, that if at any time there is more than one such Person, “U.S. Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean only the U.S. Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

“United States” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, the United States of America (including the states and the District of Columbia), its territories, its possessions and other areas subject to its jurisdiction.

“United States person” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, an individual who is a citizen or resident of the United States, a corporation, partnership or other entity created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, an estate the income of which is subject to United States federal income taxation regardless of its source, or a trust if (A) it is subject to the primary supervision of a court within the United States and one or more United States persons have the authority to control all substantial decisions of the trust or (B) it has a valid election in effect under applicable Treasury Regulations to be treated as a United States person.

“Valuation Date” has the meaning specified in Section 3.12(c).

“Vice President”, when used with respect to the Trustees, means any vice president, whether or not designated by a number or a word or words added before or after the title “vice president”.

“Voting Stock” means with respect to any Person, securities of any class or classes of Capital Stock in such Person entitling the holder thereof (whether at all times or at the time that such class of Capital Stock has voting power by reason of the happening of any contingency) to vote in the election of members of the board of directors or comparable body of such Person.

“Writing” has the meaning specified in Section 6.13.

“Yield to Maturity” means the yield to maturity, computed at the time of issuance of a Security (or, if applicable, at the most recent redetermination of interest on such Security) and as set forth in such Security in accordance with generally accepted United States bond yield computation principles.

SECTION 1.02 Compliance Certificates and Opinions.

Upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustees to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustees an Officers’ Certificate stating that all conditions precedent, if any, provided for in this Indenture (including any covenant compliance with which constitutes a condition precedent) relating to the proposed action have been complied with and, if requested by the Trustee, an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such counsel all such conditions precedent, if any, have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or request as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or request, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

Every certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a covenant or condition provided for in this Indenture (other than pursuant to Section 10.04) shall include:

- (1) a statement that each individual signing such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition and the definitions herein relating thereto;
- (2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;
- (3) a statement that, in the opinion of each such individual, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and
- (4) a statement as to whether, in the opinion of each such individual, such covenant or condition has been complied with.

SECTION 1.03 Form of Documents Delivered to Trustees.

In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion with respect to some matters and one or more other such Persons may certify or give an opinion as to other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate or opinion of an officer of the Company may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon an Opinion of Counsel, a certificate of, or representations by, counsel, unless such officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is based are erroneous. Any such certificate or Opinion of Counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company stating that the information with respect to such factual matters is in the possession of the Company, unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to such matters are erroneous.

Any certificate or opinion of an officer of the Company or of counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to accounting matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an accountant or firm of accountants in the employ of the Company, unless such officer or counsel, as the case may be, knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the accounting matters upon which such certificate or opinion may be based are erroneous. Any certificate or opinion of any independent firm of public accountants filed with the Trustees shall contain a statement that such firm is independent.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

SECTION 1.04 Acts of Holders.

(a) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be given or taken by Holders of the Outstanding Securities of all series or one or more series, as the case may be, may be embodied in and evidenced by one or more instruments of substantially similar tenor signed by such Holders in person or by agents duly appointed in writing. If Securities of a series are issuable as Bearer Securities, any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be given or taken by Holders of such series may, alternatively, be embodied in and evidenced by the record of Holders of Securities of such series voting in favor thereof, either in person or by proxies duly appointed in writing, at any meeting of Holders of Securities of such series duly called and held in accordance with the provisions of Article Fifteen, or a combination of such instruments and any such record. Except as herein otherwise expressly provided, such action shall become effective when such instrument or instruments or record or both are delivered to the Trustees and, where it is hereby expressly required, to the Company. Such instrument or instruments and any such record (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the "Act" of the Holders signing such instrument or instruments or so voting at any such meeting. Proof of execution of any such instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent, or of the holding by any Person of a Security, shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and conclusive in favor of the Trustees and the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section. The record of any meeting of Holders of Securities shall be proved in the manner provided in Section 15.06.

(b) The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved by the affidavit of a witness of such execution or by a certificate of a notary public or other officer authorized by law to take acknowledgments of deeds, certifying that the individual signing such instrument or writing acknowledged to him the execution thereof. Where such execution is by a signer acting in a capacity other than his individual capacity, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of authority. The fact and date of the execution of any such instrument or writing, or the authority of the Person executing the same, may also be proved in any other manner which the Trustees deem sufficient.

(c) The principal amount and serial numbers of Registered Securities held by any Person, and the date of holding the same, shall be proved by the Security Register.

(d) The principal amount and serial numbers of Bearer Securities held by any Person, and the date of holding the same, may be proved by the production of such Bearer Securities or by a certificate executed, as depositary, by any trust company, bank, banker or other depositary, wherever situated, if such certificate shall be deemed by the Trustees to be satisfactory, showing that at the date therein mentioned such Person had on deposit with such depositary, or exhibited to it, the Bearer Securities therein described; or such facts may be proved by the certificate or affidavit of the Person holding such Bearer Securities, if such certificate or affidavit is deemed by the Trustees to be satisfactory. The Trustees and the Company may assume that such ownership of any Bearer Security continues until (1) another certificate or affidavit bearing a later date issued in respect of the same Bearer Security is produced, or (2) such Bearer Security is produced to the Trustees by some other Person, or (3) such Bearer Security is surrendered in exchange for a Registered Security, or (4) such Bearer Security is no longer Outstanding. The principal amount and serial numbers of Bearer Securities held by any Person, and the date of holding the same, may also be proved in any other manner that the Trustees deem sufficient.

(e) If the Company shall solicit from the Holders of Registered Securities any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, the Company may, at its option, by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, fix in advance a record date for the determination of Holders entitled to give such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, but the Company shall have no obligation to do so. Notwithstanding Trust Indenture Legislation, such record date shall be the record date specified in or pursuant to such Board Resolution, which shall be a date not earlier than the date 30 days prior to the first solicitation of Holders generally in connection therewith and not later than the date such solicitation is completed. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act may be given before or after such record date, but only the Holders of record at the close of business on such record date shall be deemed to be Holders for the purposes of determining whether Holders of the requisite proportion of Outstanding Securities have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, and for that purpose the Outstanding Securities shall be computed as of such record date; provided that no such authorization, agreement or consent by the Holders on such record date shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than eleven months after the record date.

(f) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act of the Holder of any Security shall bind every future Holder of the same Security and the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof in respect of anything done, omitted or suffered to be done by the Trustees or the Company in reliance thereon, whether or not notation of such action is made upon such Security.

SECTION 1.05 Notices, etc. to Trustees and Company.

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Holders or other documents provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with,

- (1) the U.S. Trustee, by the Canadian Trustee, any Holder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing to or with the U.S. Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: _____, or
- (2) the Canadian Trustee, by the U.S. Trustee, any Holder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing to or with the Canadian Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: _____, or
- (3) the Company by either Trustee or any Holder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (unless otherwise herein expressly provided). If in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to the Company, Attention: Chief Financial Officer, Facsimile No: (604) 677-6915 or such other officer or facsimile number as the Company may designate on written notice to the Trustees, addressed to it at the address of its principal office specified in the first paragraph of this Indenture or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Trustees by the Company.

SECTION 1.06 Notice to Holders; Waiver.

Where this Indenture provides for notice of any event to Holders of Registered Securities by the Company or the Trustees, such notice shall be sufficiently given (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each such Holder affected by such event, at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date, and not earlier than the earliest date, prescribed for the giving of such notice. In any case where notice to Holders of Registered Securities is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Holder shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders of Registered Securities or the sufficiency of any notice to Holders of Bearer Securities given as provided. Any notice mailed to a Holder in the manner herein prescribed shall be conclusively deemed to have been received by such Holder, whether or not such Holder actually receives such notice.

In case, by reason of the suspension of or irregularities in regular mail service or by reason of any other cause, it shall be impractical to mail notice of any event to Holders of Registered Securities when such notice is required to be given pursuant to any provision of this Indenture, then any manner of giving such notice as shall be satisfactory to the Trustees shall be deemed to be sufficient giving of such notice for every purpose hereunder.

Except as otherwise expressly provided herein or otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, where this Indenture provides for notice to Holders of Bearer Securities of any event, such notice shall be sufficiently given to Holders of Bearer Securities if published in an Authorized Newspaper in The City of New York and in such other city or cities as may be specified in such Securities on a Business Day at least twice, the first such publication to be not earlier than the earliest date, and not later than the latest date, prescribed for the giving of such notice. Any such notice shall be deemed to have been given on the date of the first such publication.

In case, by reason of the suspension of publication of any Authorized Newspaper or Authorized Newspapers or by reason of any other cause, it shall be impracticable to publish any notice to Holders of Bearer Securities as provided above, then such notification to Holders of Bearer Securities as shall be given with the approval of the Trustees shall constitute sufficient notice to such Holders for every purpose hereunder. Neither the failure to give notice by publication to Holders of Bearer Securities as provided above, nor any defect in any notice so published, shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders of Bearer Securities or the sufficiency of any notice to Holders of Registered Securities given as provided herein.

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver required or permitted under this Indenture shall be in the English language, except that any published notice may be in an official language of the country of publication.

Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders shall be filed with the Trustees, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

SECTION 1.07 Effect of Headings and Table of Contents.

The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

SECTION 1.08 Successors and Assigns.

All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company and the Trustees shall bind their successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

SECTION 1.09 Severability Clause.

In case any provision in this Indenture or in any Security or coupon shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

SECTION 1.10 Benefits of Indenture.

Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities or coupons, express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, any Securities Registrar and their successors hereunder and the Holders of Securities or coupons, any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture. Subject to Section 1.16, at all times in relation to this Indenture and any action to be taken hereunder, the Company and the Trustees each shall observe and comply with Trust Indenture Legislation and the Company, the Trustees and each Holder of a Security shall be entitled to the benefits of Trust Indenture Legislation.

SECTION 1.11 Governing Law.

This Indenture and the Securities and coupons shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of the State of New York, but without giving effect to applicable principles of conflicts of law to the extent that the application of the law of another jurisdiction would be required thereby. Each Trustee and the Company agrees to comply with all provisions of Trust Indenture Legislation applicable to or binding upon it in connection with this Indenture and any action to be taken hereunder. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, the exercise, performance or discharge by the Canadian Trustee of any of its rights, powers, duties or responsibilities hereunder shall be construed in accordance with the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable thereto.

SECTION 1.12 Legal Holidays.

In any case where any Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, sinking fund payment date or Stated Maturity or Maturity of any Security shall not be a Business Day at any Place of Payment or other location contemplated hereunder, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or of any Security or coupon other than a provision in the Securities of any series which specifically states that such provision shall apply in lieu of this Section), payment of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, need not be made at such Place of Payment or other location contemplated hereunder on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day at such Place of Payment or other location contemplated hereunder with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date or Redemption Date or sinking fund payment date, or at the Stated Maturity or Maturity; provided that no interest shall accrue for the period from and after such Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, sinking fund payment date, Stated Maturity or Maturity, as the case may be.

SECTION 1.13 Agent for Service; Submission to Jurisdiction; Waiver of Immunities.

By the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company (i) acknowledges that it has irrevocably designated and appointed the Corporation Trust Company, 1209 Orange Street, Wilmington, DE 19801 as its authorized agent upon which process may be served in any suit or proceeding arising out of or relating to the Securities or this Indenture that may be instituted in any federal or New York state court located in The Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York, or brought by the Trustees (whether in their individual capacity or in their capacity as Trustees hereunder), (ii) irrevocably submits to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of any such court in any such suit or proceeding, and (iii) agrees that service of process upon the Corporation Trust Company and written notice of said service to the Company (mailed or delivered to the Company, attention: Senior Director, Legal, at its principal office at 1385 West 8th Avenue, Suite 540, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada V6H 3V9, as specified in Section 1.05 hereof), shall be deemed in every respect effective service of process upon the Company in any such suit or proceeding. The Company further agrees to take any and all action, including the execution and filing of any and all such documents and instruments, as may be necessary to continue such designation and appointment of the Corporation trust Company in full force and effect so long as this Indenture shall be in full force and effect.

To the extent that the Company has or hereafter may acquire any immunity from jurisdiction of any court or from any legal process (whether through service of notice, attachment prior to judgment, attachment in aid of execution, execution or otherwise) with respect to itself or its property, the Company hereby irrevocably waives such immunity in respect of its obligations under this Indenture and the Securities, to the extent permitted by law.

The Company irrevocably and unconditionally waives, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any objection that it may now or hereafter have to the laying of venue of any such action, suit or proceeding in any such court or any appellate court with respect thereto. The Company irrevocably waives, to the fullest extent permitted by law, the defense of an inconvenient forum to the maintenance of such action, suit or proceeding in any such court.

SECTION 1.14 Conversion of Currency.

(a) The Company covenants and agrees that the following provisions shall apply to conversion of currency in the case of the Securities and this Indenture:

- (i) If for the purposes of obtaining judgment in, or enforcing the judgment of, any court in any country, it becomes necessary to convert into a currency (the "Judgment Currency") an amount due or contingently due in any other currency under the Securities of any series and this Indenture (the "Base Currency"), then the conversion shall be made at the rate of exchange prevailing on the Business Day before the day on which a final judgment is given or the order of enforcement is made, as the case may be (unless a court shall otherwise determine).
- (ii) If there is a change in the rate of exchange prevailing between the Business Day before the day on which the judgment referred to in (i) above is given or an order of enforcement is made, as the case may be (or such other date as a court shall determine), and the date of receipt of the amount due, the Company shall pay such additional (or, as the case may be, such lesser) amount, if any, as may be necessary so that the amount paid in the Judgment Currency when converted at the rate of exchange prevailing on the date of receipt will produce the amount in the Base Currency originally due.

(b) In the event of the winding-up of the Company at any time while any amount or damages owing under the Securities and this Indenture, or any judgment or order rendered in respect thereof, shall remain outstanding, the Company shall indemnify and hold the Holders and the Trustees harmless against any deficiency arising or resulting from any variation in rates of exchange between (1) the date as of which the equivalent of the amount in the Base Currency due or contingently due under the Securities and this Indenture (other than under this Subsection (b)) is calculated for the purposes of such winding-up and (2) the final date for the filing of proofs of claim in such winding-up. For the purpose of this Subsection (b) the final date for the filing of proofs of claim in the winding-up of the Company shall be the date fixed by the liquidator or otherwise in accordance with the relevant provisions of applicable law as being the latest practicable date as at which liabilities of the Company may be ascertained for such winding-up prior to payment by the liquidator or otherwise in respect thereto.

(c) The obligations contained in Subsections (a)(ii) and (b) of this Section shall constitute separate and independent obligations of the Company from its other obligations under the Securities and this Indenture, shall give rise to separate and independent causes of action against the Company, shall apply irrespective of any waiver or extension granted by any Holder or the Trustees or either of them from time to time and shall continue in full force and effect notwithstanding any judgment or order or the filing of any proof of claim in the winding up of the Company for a liquidated sum in respect of amounts due hereunder (other than under Subsection (b) above) or under any such judgment or order. Any such deficiency as aforesaid shall be deemed to constitute a loss suffered by the Holders or the Trustees, as the case may be, and no proof or evidence of any actual loss shall be required by the Company or its liquidator. In the case of Subsection (b) above, the amount of such deficiency shall not be deemed to be increased or reduced by any variation in rates of exchange occurring between the said final date and the date of any liquidating distribution.

The term “rate(s) of exchange” shall mean the rate of exchange quoted by a Canadian chartered bank as may be designated in writing by the Company to the Trustees from time to time, at its central foreign exchange desk in its main office in Toronto at 12:00 noon (Toronto time) on the relevant date for purchases of the Base Currency with the Judgment Currency and includes any premiums and costs of exchange payable. The Trustees shall have no duty or liability with respect to monitoring or enforcing this Section.

SECTION 1.15 Currency Equivalent.

Except as otherwise provided in this Indenture, for purposes of the construction of the terms of this Indenture or of the Securities, in the event that any amount is stated herein in the Currency of one nation (the “First Currency”), as of any date such amount shall also be deemed to represent the amount in the Currency of any other relevant nation (the “Other Currency”) which is required to purchase such amount in the First Currency at the Bank of Canada noon rate as reported by Telerate on screen 3194 (or such other means of reporting the Bank of Canada noon rate as may be agreed upon by each of the parties to this Indenture) on the date of determination.

SECTION 1.16 Conflict with Trust Indenture Legislation.

If and to the extent that any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies or conflicts with any mandatory requirement of Trust Indenture Legislation, such mandatory requirement shall control. If and to the extent that any provision hereof modifies or excludes any provision of Trust Indenture Legislation that may be so modified or excluded, the latter provision shall be deemed to apply hereof as so modified or to be excluded, as the case may be.

SECTION 1.17 Incorporators, Shareholders, Officers and Directors of the Company Exempt from Individual Liability.

No recourse under or upon any obligation, covenant or agreement contained in this Indenture, or in any Security, or because of any indebtedness evidenced thereby, shall be had against any incorporator, as such, or against any past, present or future shareholder, officer or director, as such, of the Company or of any successor, either directly or through the Company or any successor, under any rule of law, statute or constitutional provision or by the enforcement of any assessment or by any legal or equitable proceeding or otherwise, all such liability being expressly waived and released by the acceptance of the Securities by the Holders and as part of the consideration for the issue of the Securities.

ARTICLE TWO
SECURITIES FORMS

SECTION 2.01 Forms Generally.

The Registered Securities, if any, of each series and the Bearer Securities, if any, of each series and related coupons shall be in substantially the forms as shall be established by or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in each case with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture, and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification and such legends or endorsements placed thereon as may be required to comply with the rules of any securities exchange or as may, consistently herewith, be determined by the officers executing such Securities or coupons, as evidenced by their execution of the Securities or coupons. If the forms of Securities or coupons of any series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Corporate Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustees at or prior to the delivery of the Company Order contemplated by Section 3.03 for the authentication and delivery of such Securities or coupons. Any portion of the text of any Security may be set forth on the reverse thereof, with an appropriate reference thereto on the face of the Security.

Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, Bearer Securities shall have interest coupons attached.

Either Trustee's certificate of authentication on all Securities shall be in substantially the form set forth in this Article.

The definitive Securities and coupons shall be printed, lithographed or engraved on steel-engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officers of the Company executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities or coupons.

SECTION 2.02 Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication.

Subject to Section 6.12, either Trustee's certificate of authentication shall be in substantially the following form:

TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE OF AUTHENTICATION

(Certificate of Authentication may be executed by either Trustee)

Dated:

, as U.S. Trustee, certifies that this is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

as U.S. Trustee

By: _____
Authorized Officer

Dated:

, as Canadian Trustee, certifies that this is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

as Canadian Trustee

By: _____
Authorized Officer

SECTION 2.03 Securities Issuable in Global Form.

If Securities of or within a series are issuable in global form, as specified and contemplated by Section 3.01, then, notwithstanding clause (10) of Section 3.01, any such Security shall represent such of the Outstanding Securities of such series as shall be specified therein and may provide that it shall represent the aggregate amount of Outstanding Securities of such series from time to time endorsed thereon and that the aggregate amount of Outstanding Securities of such series represented thereby may from time to time be increased or decreased to reflect exchanges. Any endorsement of a Security in global form to reflect the amount, or any increase or decrease in the amount, of Outstanding Securities represented thereby shall be made by the Trustees in such manner and upon instructions given by such Person or Persons as shall be specified therein or in the Company Order to be delivered to the Trustees pursuant to Section 3.03 or Section 3.04. Subject to the provisions of Section 3.03 and, if applicable, Section 3.04, the Trustees shall deliver and redeliver any Security in permanent global form in the manner and upon instructions given by the Person or Persons specified therein or in the applicable Company Order. If a Company Order pursuant to Section 3.03 or Section 3.04 has been, or simultaneously is, delivered, any instructions by the Company with respect to endorsement or delivery or redelivery of a Security in global form shall be in writing but need not comply with Section 1.02 and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel.

The provisions of the last sentence of Section 3.03 shall apply to any Security represented by a Security in global form if such Security was never issued and sold by the Company and the Company delivers to the Trustees the Security in global form together with written instructions (which need not comply with Section 1.02 and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel) with regard to the reduction in the principal amount of Securities represented thereby, together with the written statement contemplated by the last sentence of Section 3.03.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 3.07, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, payment of principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on any Security in permanent global form shall be made to the Person or Persons specified therein.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 3.09 and except as provided in the preceding paragraph, the Company, the Trustees and any agent of the Company and the Trustees shall treat as the Holder of such principal amount of Outstanding Securities represented by a permanent global Security (i) in the case of a permanent global Security in registered form, the Holder of such permanent global Security in registered form, or (ii) in the case of a permanent global Security in bearer form, Euroclear or Clearstream.

ARTICLE THREE THE SECURITIES

SECTION 3.01 Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series.

The aggregate principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series and may be denominated and payable in Dollars or any Foreign Currency. The principal amount of any series of Securities may be increased and issued under this Indenture. There shall be established in one or more Board Resolutions or pursuant to authority granted by one or more Board Resolutions and, subject to Section 3.03, set forth in, or determined in the manner provided in, an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, prior to the issuance of Securities of any series, any or all of the following, as applicable (each of which (except for the matters set forth in clauses (1), (2) and (19) below), if so provided, may be determined from time to time by the Company with respect to unissued Securities of the series and set forth in such Securities of the series when issued from time to time):

- (1) the title of the Securities of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of the series from all other series of Securities);
- (2) the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of the series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the series pursuant to Section 3.04, 3.05, 3.06, 9.06, 11.07 or 13.05);
- (3) the extent and manner, if any, to which payment on or in respect of the Securities of the series will be senior or will be subordinated to the prior payment of other liabilities and obligations of the Company, and whether the payment of principal, premium, if any, and interest, if any, will be guaranteed by any other Person and the nature and priority of any security;

- (4) the percentage or percentages of principal amount at which the Securities of the series will be issued;
- (5) the date or dates, or the method by which such date or dates will be determined or extended, on which the Securities of the series may be issued and the date, or dates, or the method by which such date or dates will be determined or extended, on which the principal of the Securities of the series is payable;
- (6) the rate or rates at which the Securities of the series shall bear interest (whether fixed or variable), if any, or the method by which such rate or rates shall be determined, the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue, or the method by which such date or dates shall be determined, the Interest Payment Dates on which such interest shall be payable and the Regular Record Date, if any, for the interest payable on any Registered Security on any Interest Payment Date, or the method by which such date or dates shall be determined, and the basis upon which interest shall be calculated if other than on the basis of a 360-day year of 12 30-day months;
- (7) the place or places, if any, other than or in addition to the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York, where the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on Securities of the series shall be payable, where any Registered Securities of the series may be surrendered for registration of transfer, where Securities of the series may be surrendered for exchange, where Securities of the series that are convertible or exchangeable may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, as applicable and, if different than the location specified in Section 1.05, the place or places where notices or demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of the series and this Indenture may be served;
- (8) the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which, the Currency in which, and other terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company, if the Company is to have that option;
- (9) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem, repay or purchase Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provision or at the option of a Holder thereof, and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which, the Currency in which, and other terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series shall be redeemed, repaid or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;
- (10) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denomination or denominations in which any Registered Securities of the series shall be issuable and, if other than denominations of \$5,000, the denomination or denominations in which any Bearer Securities of the series shall be issuable;
- (11) if other than the Trustees, the identity of each Security Registrar and/or Paying Agent;

- (12) if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of Securities of the series that shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.02 or the method by which such portion shall be determined;
- (13) if other than Dollars, the Currency in which payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of the series shall be payable or in which the Securities of the series shall be denominated and the particular provisions applicable thereto in accordance with, in addition to or in lieu of any of the provisions of Section 3.12;
- (14) whether the amount of payments of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of the series may be determined with reference to an index, formula or other method (which index, formula or method may be based, without limitation, on one or more Currencies, commodities, equity indices or other indices), and the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;
- (15) whether the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of the series are to be payable, at the election of the Company or a Holder thereof, in a Currency other than that in which such Securities are denominated or stated to be payable, the period or periods within which (including the Election Date), and the terms and conditions upon which, such election may be made, and the time and manner of determining the exchange rate between the Currency in which such Securities are denominated or stated to be payable and the Currency in which such Securities are to be so payable, in each case in accordance with, in addition to or in lieu of any of the provisions of Section 3.12;
- (16) the designation of the initial Exchange Rate Agent, if any;
- (17) the applicability, if any, of Sections 14.02 and/or 14.03 to the Securities of the series and any provisions in modification of, in addition to or in lieu of any of the provisions of Article Fourteen that shall be applicable to the Securities of the series;
- (18) provisions, if any, granting special rights to the Holders of Securities of the series upon the occurrence of such events as may be specified;
- (19) any deletions from, modifications of or additions to the Events of Default or covenants (including any deletions from, modifications of or additions to Section 10.09) of the Company with respect to Securities of the series, whether or not such Events of Default or covenants are consistent with the Events of Default or covenants set forth herein;

- (20) whether Securities of the series are to be issuable as Registered Securities, Bearer Securities (with or without coupons) or both, any restrictions applicable to the offer, sale or delivery of Bearer Securities, whether any Securities of the series are to be issuable initially in temporary global form and whether any Securities of the series are to be issuable in permanent global form with or without coupons and, if so, whether beneficial owners of interests in any such permanent global Security may exchange such interests for Securities of such series and of like tenor of any authorized form and denomination and the circumstances under which any such exchanges may occur, if other than in the manner provided in Section 3.05, whether Registered Securities of the series may be exchanged for Bearer Securities of the series (if permitted by applicable laws and regulations), whether Bearer Securities of the series may be exchanged for Registered Securities of such series, and the circumstances under which and the place or places where any such exchanges may be made and, if Securities of the series are to be issuable in global form, the identity of any initial depository therefor;
- (21) the date as of which any Bearer Securities of the series and any temporary global Security representing Outstanding Securities of the series shall be dated if other than the date of original issuance of the first Security of the series to be issued;
- (22) the Person to whom any interest on any Registered Security of the series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest, the manner in which, or the Person to whom, any interest on any Bearer Security of the series shall be payable, if otherwise than upon presentation and surrender of the coupons appertaining thereto as they severally mature, and the extent to which, or the manner in which, any interest payable on a temporary global Security on an Interest Payment Date will be paid if other than in the manner provided in Section 3.04;
- (23) if Securities of the series are to be issuable in definitive form (whether upon original issue or upon exchange of a temporary Security of such series) only upon receipt of certain certificates or other documents or satisfaction of other conditions, the form and/or terms of such certificates, documents or conditions;
- (24) if the Securities of the series are to be issued upon the exercise of warrants, the time, manner and place for such Securities to be authenticated and delivered;
- (25) whether, under what circumstances and the Currency in which the Company will pay Additional Amounts as contemplated by Section 10.05 on the Securities of the series to any Holder (including any modification to the definition of such term) in respect of any tax, assessment or governmental charge and, if so, whether the Company will have the option to redeem such Securities rather than pay such Additional Amounts (and the terms of any such option);
- (26) if the Securities of the series are to be convertible into or exchangeable for any securities of any Person (including the Company), the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so convertible or exchangeable;
- (27) the applicability, if any, of Sections 10.05 and 11.08 to such Securities;
- (28) provisions as to modification, amendment or variation of any rights or terms attaching to the Securities; and

(29) any other terms, conditions, rights and preferences (or limitations on such rights and preferences) relating to the series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the requirements of Trust Indenture Legislation or the provisions of this Indenture).

All Securities of any one series and the coupons appertaining to any Bearer Securities of such series shall be substantially identical except, in the case of Registered Securities, as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to such Board Resolution (subject to Section 3.03) and set forth in such Officers' Certificate or in any such indenture supplemental hereto. Not all Securities of any one series need be issued at the same time, and, unless otherwise provided, a series may be reopened for issuances of additional Securities of such series.

If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to one or more Board Resolutions, such Board Resolutions shall be delivered to the Trustees at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate setting forth the terms of the series.

SECTION 3.02 Denominations.

The Securities of each series shall be issuable in such denominations as shall be specified as contemplated by Section 3.01. With respect to Securities of any series denominated in Dollars, in the absence of any such provisions, the Registered Securities of such series, other than Registered Securities issued in global form (which may be of any denomination), shall be issuable in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof and the Bearer Securities of such series, other than the Bearer Securities issued in global form (which may be of any denomination), shall be issuable in a denomination of \$5,000.

SECTION 3.03 Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating.

The Securities and any coupons appertaining thereto shall be executed on behalf of the Company by any one of the President, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Business Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Chief Accounting Officer, Corporate Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company, or if two or more persons share such office any one of such persons. The signature of any of these officers on the Securities or coupons may be the manual or facsimile signatures of the present or any future such authorized officer and may be imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Securities.

Securities or coupons bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities or coupons.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series together with any coupon appertaining thereto, executed by the Company to the applicable Trustee for authentication, together with a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, and the applicable Trustee in accordance with such Company Order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities; provided, however, that, in connection with its original issuance, no Bearer Security shall be mailed or otherwise delivered to any location in the United States; and provided further that, unless otherwise specified with respect to any series of Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, a Bearer Security may be delivered in connection with its original issuance only if the Person entitled to receive such Bearer Security shall have furnished a certificate in the form set forth in Exhibit A-1 to this Indenture, dated no earlier than 15 days prior to the earlier of the date on which such Bearer Security is delivered and the date on which any temporary Security first becomes exchangeable for such Bearer Security in accordance with the terms of such temporary Security and this Indenture. If any Security shall be represented by a permanent global Bearer Security, then, for purposes of this Section and Section 3.04, the notation of a beneficial owner's interest therein upon original issuance of such Security or upon exchange of a portion of a temporary global Security shall be deemed to be delivery in connection with its original issuance of such beneficial owner's interest in such permanent global Security. Except as permitted by Section 3.06, the Trustees shall not authenticate and deliver any Bearer Security unless all appurtenant coupons for interest then matured have been detached and cancelled. If not all the Securities of any series are to be issued at one time and if the Board Resolution or supplemental indenture establishing such series shall so permit, such Company Order may set forth procedures acceptable to the Trustees for the issuance of such Securities and determining terms of particular Securities of such series such as interest rate, stated maturity, date of issuance and date from which interest shall accrue.

In authenticating such Securities, and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustees shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Trust Indenture Legislation) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating:

(a) that the form or forms of such Securities and any coupons have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture;

(b) that the terms of such Securities and any coupons have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture;

(c) that such Securities, together with any coupons appertaining thereto, when completed by appropriate insertions and executed and delivered by the Company to the Trustees for authentication in accordance with this Indenture, authenticated and delivered by the Trustees, or either of them, in accordance with this Indenture and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute the legal, valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms, subject to applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization and other similar laws of general applicability relating to or affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights and to general equitable principles;

(d) that all laws and requirements in respect of the execution and delivery by the Company of such Securities, any coupons and of the supplemental indentures, if any, have been complied with and that authentication and delivery of such Securities and any coupons and the execution and delivery of the supplemental indentures, if any, by the Trustees will not violate the terms of the Indenture;

(e) that the Company has the corporate power to issue such Securities and any coupons, and has duly taken all necessary corporate action with respect to such issuance; and

(f) that the issuance of such Securities and any coupons will not contravene the articles of incorporation or continuance, or such other constating documents then in effect, if any, or by-laws of the Company or result in any violation of any of the terms or provisions of any law or regulation or of any indenture, mortgage or other agreement known to such Counsel by which the Company is bound.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 3.01 and of the preceding two paragraphs, if not all the Securities of any series are to be issued at one time, it shall not be necessary to deliver the Officers' Certificate otherwise required pursuant to Section 3.01 or the Company Order and Opinion of Counsel otherwise required pursuant to the preceding two paragraphs prior to or at the time of issuance of each Security, but such documents shall be delivered prior to or at the time of issuance of the first Security of such series.

The Trustees shall not be required to authenticate and deliver any such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustees' own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner which is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustees.

Each Registered Security shall be dated the date of its authentication and each Bearer Security shall be dated as of the date specified as contemplated by Section 3.01.

No Security or coupon shall entitle a Holder to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for herein duly executed by the U.S. Trustee or by the Canadian Trustee by manual signature of an authorized officer, and such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder and is entitled to the benefits of this Indenture. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if any Security shall have been authenticated and delivered hereunder but never issued and sold by the Company, and the Company shall deliver such Security to the Trustees for cancellation as provided in Section 3.10 together with a written statement (which need not comply with Section 1.02 and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel) stating that such Security has never been issued and sold by the Company, for all purposes of this Indenture such Security shall be deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder and shall never entitle a Holder to the benefits of this Indenture.

SECTION 3.04 Temporary Securities.

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and upon Company Order the Trustees, or either of them, shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities which are printed, lithographed, typewritten, mimeographed or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued, in registered form or, if authorized, in bearer form with one or more coupons or without coupons, and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as the officers executing such Securities may determine, as conclusively evidenced by their execution of such Securities. Such temporary Securities may be in global form.

Except in the case of temporary Securities in global form (which shall be exchanged in accordance with the provisions of the following paragraphs), if temporary Securities of any series are issued, the Company will cause definitive Securities of that series to be prepared without unreasonable delay. After the preparation of definitive Securities of such series, the temporary Securities of such series shall be exchangeable for definitive Securities of such series upon surrender of the temporary Securities of such series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, without charge to the Holder. Notwithstanding that procedure, Canadian Securities issued in temporary form must be returned to the Canadian Trustee for cancellation. Upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities of any series (accompanied by any unmatured coupons appertaining thereto), the Company shall execute and either Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a like principal amount of definitive Securities of the same series of authorized denominations; provided, however, that no definitive Bearer Security shall be delivered in exchange for a temporary Registered Security; and provided further that a definitive Bearer Security shall be delivered in exchange for a temporary Bearer Security only in compliance with the conditions set forth in Section 3.03. Until so exchanged the temporary Securities of any series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series.

If temporary Securities of any series are issued in global form, any such temporary global Security shall, unless otherwise provided therein, be delivered to the London office of a depositary or common depositary (the "Common Depositary") or the Depositary, as applicable, for the benefit of Euroclear and Clearstream, for credit to the respective accounts of the beneficial owners of such Securities (or to such other accounts as they may direct).

Without unnecessary delay but in any event not later than the date specified in, or determined pursuant to the terms of, any such temporary global Security (the "Exchange Date"), the Company shall deliver to the Trustees definitive Securities, in aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of such temporary global Security, executed by the Company. On or after the Exchange Date such temporary global Security shall be surrendered by the Common Depositary to the Trustees, as the Company's agent for such purpose, to be exchanged, in whole or from time to time in part, for definitive Securities without charge and either Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in exchange for each portion of such temporary global Security, an equal aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of the same series of authorized denominations and of like tenor as the portion of such temporary global Security to be exchanged. The definitive Securities to be delivered in exchange for any such temporary global Security shall be in bearer form, registered form, permanent global bearer form or permanent global registered form, or any combination thereof, as specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, and, if any combination thereof is so specified, as requested by the beneficial owner thereof; provided, however, that, unless otherwise specified in such temporary global Security, upon such presentation by the Common Depositary, such temporary global Security is accompanied by a certificate dated the Exchange Date or a subsequent date and signed by Euroclear as to the portion of such temporary global Security held for its account then to be exchanged and a certificate dated the Exchange Date or a subsequent date and signed by Clearstream as to the portion of such temporary global Security held for its account then to be exchanged, each in the form set forth in Exhibit A-2 to this Indenture (or in such other form as may be established pursuant to Section 3.01); and provided further that definitive Bearer Securities shall be delivered in exchange for a portion of a temporary global Security only in compliance with the requirements of Section 3.03.

Unless otherwise specified in such temporary global Security, the interest of a beneficial owner of Securities of a series in a temporary global Security shall be exchanged for definitive Securities of the same series and of like tenor following the Exchange Date when the account holder instructs Euroclear and Clearstream, as the case may be, to request such exchange on his behalf and delivers to Euroclear and Clearstream, as the case may be, a certificate in the form set forth in Exhibit A-1 to this Indenture (or in such other form as may be established pursuant to Section 3.01), dated no earlier than 15 days prior to the Exchange Date, copies of which certificate shall be available from the offices of Euroclear and Clearstream, the Trustees, any Authenticating Agent appointed for such series of Securities and each Paying Agent. Unless otherwise specified in such temporary global Security, any such exchange shall be made free of charge to the beneficial owners of such temporary global Security, except that a Person receiving definitive Securities must bear the cost of insurance, postage, transportation and the like in the event that such Person does not take delivery of such definitive Securities in person at the offices of Euroclear and Clearstream. Definitive Securities in bearer form to be delivered in exchange for any portion of a temporary global Security shall be delivered only outside the United States.

Until exchanged in full as hereinabove provided, the temporary Securities of any series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of the same series and of like tenor authenticated and delivered hereunder, except that, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, interest payable on a temporary global Security on an Interest Payment Date for Securities of such series occurring prior to the applicable Exchange Date shall be payable to Euroclear and Clearstream on such Interest Payment Date upon delivery by Euroclear and Clearstream to the Trustees of a certificate or certificates in the form set forth in Exhibit A-2 to this Indenture (or in such other form as may be established pursuant to Section 3.01), for credit without further interest thereon on or after such Interest Payment Date to the respective accounts of the Persons who are the beneficial owners of such temporary global Security on such Interest Payment Date and who have each delivered to Euroclear and Clearstream, as the case may be, a certificate dated no earlier than 15 days prior to the Interest Payment Date occurring prior to such Exchange Date in the form set forth in Exhibit A-1 to this Indenture (or in such other form as may be established pursuant to Section 3.01). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein contained, the certifications made pursuant to this paragraph shall satisfy the certification requirements of the preceding two paragraphs of this Section and of the third paragraph of Section 3.03 of this Indenture and the interests of the Persons who are the beneficial owners of the temporary global Security with respect to which such certification was made will be exchanged for definitive Securities of the same series and of like tenor on the Exchange Date or the date of certification if such date occurs after the Exchange Date, without further act or deed by such beneficial owners. Except as otherwise provided in this paragraph, no payments of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, owing with respect to a beneficial interest in a temporary global Security will be made unless and until such interest in such temporary global Security shall have been exchanged for an interest in a definitive Security. Any interest so received by Euroclear and Clearstream and not paid as herein provided shall be returned to the Trustees immediately prior to the expiration of two years after such Interest Payment Date in order to be repaid to the Company in accordance with Section 10.03.

SECTION 3.05 Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange.

So long as required by Trust Indenture Legislation, the Company shall cause to be kept at the office of a trust company registered under the Trust and Loan Companies Act, S.C. 1991, c. 45, a securities register (the "Central Register") of Holders of each series of Securities maintained in compliance with the Trust Indenture Legislation. The Company will cause the particulars of each such issue, exchange or transfer of Securities to be recorded in the Central Register. The Company hereby appoints the Canadian Trustee as the Central Registrar and Transfer Agent for the Canadian Securities and the U.S. Trustee as the Central Registrar and Transfer Agent for the U.S. Securities. There shall be two such Central Registers, one for U.S. Securities and one for Canadian Securities. If permitted by Trust Indenture Legislation, the Company may appoint a Person other than the Company or a trust corporation registered under the Trust and Loan Companies Act, S.C. 1991, c. 45 as the Central Securities Registrar.

The Company may, subject to the consent of the Appropriate Trustee, also cause to be maintained a branch register (a "Branch Register") or Branch Registers of Holders of Securities in accordance with Section 10.02 in the same manner and containing the same information with respect to each entry contained therein as contained in the Central Register. A copy of every entry in a Branch Register shall, promptly after the entry is made, be transmitted to the Central Security Registrar. If there is a conflict between the information contained in the Central Register and the information contained in the Branch Register, the information contained in the Central Register shall prevail. The Central Register together with each Branch Register are collectively referred to herein as the "Security Register". At all reasonable times, the Security Register shall be open to inspection by the Trustees. The U.S. Trustee is hereby initially appointed as branch security registrar (the "Branch Security Registrar") for the purpose of maintaining a Branch Register at its Corporate Trust Office; provided, however, the Company may appoint from time to time one or more successor or additional Branch Security Registrars and may from time to time rescind any such appointment. The Central Security Registrar together with each Branch Security Registrar are collectively referred to herein as the "Security Registrar".

Upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Registered Security of any series at the office or agency in a Place of Payment for that series, the Company shall execute, and the Appropriate Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee, one or more new Registered Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of a like aggregate principal amount and tenor.

For Canadian Securities, the Security must be duly endorsed for transfer or in a duly endorsed transferable form as applicable and must comply with the current industry practice in accordance with the Securities Transfer Association of Canada.

At the option of the Holder, Registered Securities of any series may be exchanged for other Registered Securities of the same series, of any authorized denomination and of a like aggregate principal amount, upon surrender of the Registered Securities to be exchanged at such office or agency. Whenever any Registered Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Appropriate Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Registered Securities which the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive. Unless otherwise specified with respect to any series of Securities as contemplated by Section 3.01, Bearer Securities may not be issued in exchange for Registered Securities. The Appropriate Trustee shall update the Register, or, if the Appropriate Trustee is not the Authenticating Agent, the Appropriate Trustee shall immediately provide a copy of the newly Authenticated Security to the Central Registrar so that the Register may be updated.

If (but only if) expressly permitted in or pursuant to the applicable Board Resolution and (subject to Section 3.03) set forth in the applicable Officers' Certificate, or in any indenture supplemental hereto, delivered as contemplated by Section 3.01, at the option of the Holder, Bearer Securities of any series may be exchanged for Registered Securities of the same series of any authorized denomination and of a like aggregate principal amount and tenor, upon surrender of the Bearer Securities to be exchanged at the office of the Appropriate Trustee, with all unmatured coupons and all matured coupons in default thereto appertaining. If the Holder of a Bearer Security is unable to produce any such unmatured coupon or coupons or matured coupon or coupons in default, any such permitted exchange may be effected if the Bearer Securities are accompanied by payment in funds acceptable to the Company in an amount equal to the face amount of such missing coupon or coupons, or the surrender of such missing coupon or coupons may be waived by the Company and the Trustees if there is furnished to them such security or indemnity as they may require to save each of them and any Paying Agent harmless. If thereafter the Holder of such Security shall surrender to any Paying Agent any such missing coupon in respect of which such a payment shall have been made, such Holder shall be entitled to receive the amount of such payment; provided, however, that, except as otherwise provided in Section 10.02, interest represented by coupons shall be payable only upon presentation and surrender of those coupons at an office or agency located outside the United States. Notwithstanding the foregoing, in case a Bearer Security of any series is surrendered at any such office or agency in a permitted exchange for a Registered Security of the same series and like tenor after the close of business at such office or agency on (i) any Regular Record Date and before the opening of business at such office or agency on the relevant Interest Payment Date, or (ii) any Special Record Date and before the opening of business at such office or agency on the related proposed date for payment of Defaulted Interest, such Bearer Security shall be surrendered without the coupon relating to such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, and interest or Defaulted Interest, as the case may be, will not be payable on such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, in respect of the Registered Security issued in exchange for such Bearer Security, but will be payable only to the Holder of such coupon when due in accordance with the provisions of this Indenture.

Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Appropriate Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities which the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, any permanent global Security shall be exchangeable only as provided in this paragraph. If any beneficial owner of an interest in a permanent global Security is entitled to exchange such interest for Securities of such series and of like tenor and principal amount of another authorized form and denomination, as contemplated by Section 3.01 and provided that any applicable notice provided in the permanent global Security shall have been given to the Company, the Appropriate Trustee and the Common Depository, then without unnecessary delay but in any event not later than the earliest date on which such interest may be so exchanged, the Company shall deliver to the Appropriate Trustee definitive Securities in aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of such beneficial owner's interest in such permanent global Security, executed by the Company. On or after the earliest date on which such interests may be so exchanged, such permanent global Security shall be surrendered by the Common Depository or such other depository as shall be specified in the Company Order with respect thereto to the Appropriate Trustee, as the Company's agent for such purpose, to be exchanged in whole or from time to time in part, for definitive Securities without charge, and the Appropriate Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in exchange for each portion of such permanent global Security, an equal aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of the same series of authorized denominations and of like tenor as the portion of such permanent global Security to be exchanged which, unless the Securities of the series are not issuable both as Bearer Securities and as Registered Securities, as specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, shall be in the form of Bearer Securities or Registered Securities, or any combination thereof, as shall be specified by the beneficial owner thereof. The Appropriate Trustee shall promptly provide to the Common Depository (or other applicable Depository) a replacement global Security in the aggregate principal amount of the global Security not being so exchanged. The Appropriate Trustee shall not the exchange on the register for such Securities. Notwithstanding the foregoing, no such exchanges may occur during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before any selection of Securities to be redeemed and ending on the relevant Redemption Date if the Security for which exchange is requested may be among those selected for redemption; and provided, further, that no Bearer Security delivered in exchange for a portion of a permanent global Security shall be mailed or otherwise delivered to any location in the United States. If a Registered Security is issued in exchange for any portion of a permanent global Security after the close of business at the office or agency where such exchange occurs on (i) any Regular Record Date and before the opening of business at such office or agency on the relevant Interest Payment Date, or (ii) any Special Record Date and before the opening of business at such office or agency on the related proposed date for payment of Defaulted Interest, interest or Defaulted Interest, as the case may be, will not be payable on such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, in respect of such Registered Security, but will be payable on such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, only to the Person to whom interest in respect of such portion of such permanent global Security is payable in accordance with the provisions of this Indenture.

Transfers of global Securities shall be limited to transfers in whole, but not in part, to the Depository, its successors or their respective nominees. If at any time the Depository of a series notifies the Company that it is unwilling, unable or no longer qualifies to continue as Depository of such series or if at any time the Depository for such series shall no longer be registered or in good standing under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, the Company shall appoint a successor depository with respect to the Securities for such series. If a successor to the Depository is not appointed by the Company within 90 days after the Company receives such notice or becomes aware of such condition, as the case may be, the Company's election pursuant to Section 3.01 shall no longer be effective with respect to the Securities for such series and the Company will execute, and the Appropriate Trustee, upon receipt of a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of definitive Securities of such series, will authenticate and deliver Securities of such series in definitive, registered form, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the global Security or Securities representing such series in exchange for such global Security or Securities.

The Company may at any time and in its sole discretion determine that the Securities of any series issued in the form of one or more global Securities shall no longer be represented by such global Security or Securities. In such event the Company will execute, and the Appropriate Trustee, upon receipt of a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of definitive Securities of such series, will authenticate and deliver Securities of such series in definitive, registered form, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the global Security or Securities representing such series in exchange for such global Security or Securities.

Interests of a beneficial owner in global Securities may also be transferred or exchanged for definitive Securities if, after the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to such Securities, and while such Event of Default is continuing, such owner notifies the Trustees in writing that it wishes to receive a Security in definitive, registered form and provides to the Trustees evidence reasonably satisfactory to the Trustees of its ownership interest in such Securities. In such event the Company will execute, and the Appropriate Trustee, upon receipt of a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of definitive Securities of such series, will authenticate and deliver Securities of such series in definitive, registered form, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the global Security or Securities representing such series in exchange for such global Security or Securities.

Upon the exchange of a global Security for Securities in definitive registered form, such global Security shall be cancelled by the U.S. Trustee. Securities issued in exchange for a global Security pursuant to this Section shall be registered in such names and in such authorized denominations as the Depository for such global Security, pursuant to instructions from its direct or indirect participants or otherwise, shall instruct the U.S. Trustee in writing. The U.S. Trustee shall deliver such Securities to the persons in whose names such Securities are so registered.

All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same debt, and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.

Every Registered Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or for exchange shall (if so required by the Company or the Security Registrar or applicable securities transfer industry practices) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer, in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar, duly executed by the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

Any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities may be subject to service charges by the Transfer Agent and the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 3.04, 9.06, 11.07 or 13.05 not involving any transfer.

The Company shall not be required (i) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange Securities of any series in definitive form during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the selection for redemption of Securities of that series under Section 11.03 or 12.03 and ending at the close of business on (A) if Securities of the series are issuable only as Registered Securities, the day of the mailing of the relevant notice of redemption and (B) if Securities of the series are issuable as Bearer Securities, the day of the first publication of the relevant notice of redemption or, (C) if Securities of the series are also issuable as Registered Securities and there is no publication, the mailing of the relevant notice of redemption, or (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Registered Security in definitive form so selected for redemption in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion of any Security being redeemed in part, or (iii) to exchange any Bearer Security so selected for redemption except that such a Bearer Security may be exchanged for a Registered Security of that series and like tenor; provided that such Registered Security shall be simultaneously surrendered for redemption, or (iv) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Security in definitive form which has been surrendered for repayment at the option of the Holder, except the portion, if any, of such Security not to be so repaid.

SECTION 3.06 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.

If any mutilated Security or a Security with a mutilated coupon appertaining to it is surrendered to either Trustee, the Company shall execute and either Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, with coupons corresponding to the coupons, if any, appertaining to the surrendered Security, or, in case any such mutilated Security or coupon has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, with coupons corresponding to the coupons, if any, appertaining to the surrendered Security, pay such Security or coupon. If there shall be delivered to the Company and to either Trustee (i) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security or coupon and (ii) such security (or surety in the case of the Canadian Trustee) or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustees that such Security or coupon has been acquired by a protected purchaser (as defined in Article 8 of the UCC), the Company shall execute and upon Company order either Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security or in exchange for the Security for which a destroyed, lost or stolen coupon appertains (with all appurtenant coupons not destroyed, lost or stolen), a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, with coupons corresponding to the coupons, if any, appertaining to such destroyed, lost or stolen Security or to the Security to which such destroyed, lost or stolen coupon appertains.

Notwithstanding the provisions of the previous two paragraphs, in case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security or coupon has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new security, with coupons corresponding to the coupons, if any, appertaining to such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security or to the Security to which such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen coupon appertains, pay such Security or coupon; provided, however, that payment of principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on Bearer Securities shall, except as otherwise provided in Section 10.02, be payable only at an office or agency located outside the United States and, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, any interest on Bearer Securities shall be payable only upon presentation and surrender of the coupons appertaining thereto.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustees) connected therewith.

Every new Security of any series with its coupons, if any, issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security or in exchange for a Security to which a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen coupon appertains, shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security and its coupons, if any, or the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen coupon shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and the Holders of such Security shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with the Holders of any and all other Securities of that series and their coupons, if any, duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section as amended or supplemented pursuant to this Indenture with respect to particular securities or generally are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities or coupons.

SECTION 3.07 Payment of Principal; Premium; Interest; Interest Rights Preserved; Optional Interest Reset.

(a) Unless otherwise provided as contemplated by Section 3.01 with respect to any series of securities, principal of, and premium, if any, and interest, if any, on any Registered Security which is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date or other date in which the principal of, and premium, if any, is payable shall be paid by the Paying Agent to the Person in whose name such Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such principal, premium or interest, as the case may be, at the office or agency of the Company maintained for such purpose pursuant to Section 10.02; provided, however, that each installment of principal of, and premium, if any, and interest, if any, on any Registered Security may at the Company's option be paid by (i) mailing a check for such interest, payable to or upon the written order of the Person entitled thereto pursuant to Section 3.09, to the address of such Person as it appears on the Security Register or (ii) transfer to an account located in the United States maintained by the payee of a Holder of \$2.0 million or more in aggregate principal amount of such Securities. The Paying Agent shall confirm in writing to the Canadian Trustee upon payment having been made to Holders of Canadian Securities.

Unless otherwise provided as contemplated by Section 3.01 with respect to the Securities of any series, payment of interest, if any, may be made, in the case of a Bearer Security, by transfer to an account located outside the United States maintained by the payee.

Unless otherwise provided as contemplated by Section 3.01, every permanent global Security will provide that interest, if any, payable on any Interest Payment Date will be paid to each of Euroclear and Clearstream with respect to that portion of such permanent global Security held for its account by the Common Depositary, for the purpose of permitting each of Euroclear and Clearstream to credit the interest, if any, received by it in respect of such permanent global Security to the accounts of the beneficial owners thereof.

Any interest on any Registered Security of any series which is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of having been such Holder, and such defaulted interest and, if applicable, interest on such defaulted interest (to the extent lawful) at the rate specified in the Securities of such series (such defaulted interest and, if applicable, interest thereon herein collectively called "Defaulted Interest") may be paid by the Company, at its election in each case, as provided in clause (1) or (2) below:

- (1) The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Persons in whose names the Registered Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner. The Company shall notify the Trustees in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each Registered Security of such series and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with either Trustee an amount of money in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 3.12(b), 3.12(d) and 3.12(e)) equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustees for such deposit on or prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustees shall fix a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall be not more than 15 days and not less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustees of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustees shall promptly notify the Company of such Special Record Date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be given in the manner provided in Section 1.06, not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been so given, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose name the Registered Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following clause (2).
- (2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on the Registered Securities of any series in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and, upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustees of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustees.

(b) The provisions of this Subsection may be made applicable to any series of Securities pursuant to Section 3.01 (with such modifications, additions or substitutions as may be specified pursuant to such Section 3.01). The interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) on any Security of such series may be reset by the Company on the date or dates specified on the face of such Security (each an "Optional Reset Date"). The Company may exercise such option with respect to such Security by notifying the Trustees of such exercise at least 50 but not more than 60 days prior to an Optional Reset Date for such Security. Not later than 40 days prior to each Optional Reset Date, the Trustees shall transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 1.06, to the Holder of any such Security a notice (the "Reset Notice") indicating whether the Company has elected to reset the interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable), and if so (i) such new interest rate (or such new spread or spread multiplier, if applicable) and (ii) the provisions, if any, for redemption during the period from such Optional Reset Date to the next Optional Reset Date or if there is no such next Optional Reset Date, to the Stated Maturity Date of such Security (each such period a "Subsequent Interest Period"), including the date or dates on which or the period or periods during which and the price or prices at which such redemption may occur during the Subsequent Interest Period.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, not later than 20 days prior to the Optional Reset Date, the Company may, at its option, revoke the interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) provided for in the Reset Notice and establish an interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier, if applicable) that is higher than the interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier, if applicable) provided for in the Reset Notice, for the Subsequent Interest Period by causing the Trustees to transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 1.06, notice of such higher interest rate (or such higher spread or spread multiplier, if applicable) to the Holder of such Security. Such notice shall be irrevocable. All Securities with respect to which the interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) is reset on an Optional Reset Date, and with respect to which the Holders of such Securities have not tendered such Securities for repayment (or have validly revoked any such tender) pursuant to the next succeeding paragraph, will bear such higher interest rate (or such higher spread or spread multiplier, if applicable).

The Holder of any such Security will have the option to elect repayment by the Company of the principal of such Security on each Optional Reset Date at a price equal to the principal amount thereof plus interest accrued to such Optional Reset Date. In order to obtain repayment on an Optional Reset Date, the Holder must follow the procedures set forth in Article Thirteen for repayment at the option of Holders except that the period for delivery or notification to the Trustees shall be at least 25 but not more than 35 days prior to such Optional Reset Date and except that, if the Holder has tendered any Security for repayment pursuant to the Reset Notice, the Holder may, by written notice to the Trustees, revoke such tender or repayment until the close of business on the tenth day before such Optional Reset Date.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section and Section 3.05, each Security delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, which were carried by such other Security.

SECTION 3.08 Optional Extension of Stated Maturity.

The provisions of this Section 3.08 may be made applicable to any series of Securities pursuant to Section 3.01 (with such modifications, additions or substitutions as may be specified pursuant to such Section 3.01). The Stated Maturity of any Security of such series may be extended at the option of the Company for the period or periods specified on the face of such Security (each an "Extension Period") up to but not beyond the date (the "Final Maturity") set forth on the face of such Security. The Company may exercise such option with respect to any Security by notifying the Trustees of such exercise at least 50 but not more than 60 days prior to the Stated Maturity of such Security in effect prior to the exercise of such option (the "Original Stated Maturity"). If the Company exercises such option, the Trustees shall transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 1.06, to the Holder of such Security not later than 40 days prior to the Original Stated Maturity a notice (the "Extension Notice") indicating (i) the election of the Company to extend the Stated Maturity, (ii) the new Stated Maturity, (iii) the interest rate, if any, applicable to the Extension Period and (iv) the provisions, if any, for redemption during such Extension Period. Upon the Trustees' transmittal of the Extension Notice, the Stated Maturity of such Security shall be extended automatically and, except as modified by the Extension Notice and as described in the next paragraph, such Security will have the same terms as prior to the transmittal of such Extension Notice.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, not later than 20 days before the Original Stated Maturity of such Security, the Company may, at its option, revoke the interest rate provided for in the Extension Notice and establish a higher interest rate for the Extension Period by causing the Trustees to transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 1.06, notice of such higher interest rate to the Holder of such Security. Such notice shall be irrevocable. All Securities with respect to which the Stated Maturity is extended will bear such higher interest rate.

If the Company extends the Maturity of any Security, the Holder will have the option to elect repayment of such Security by the Company on the original Stated Maturity at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus interest accrued to such date. In order to obtain repayment on the Original Stated Maturity once the Company has extended the Maturity thereof, the Holder must follow the procedures set forth in Article Thirteen for repayment at the option of Holders, except that the period for delivery or notification to the Trustees shall be at least 25 but not more than 35 days prior to the Original Stated Maturity and except that, if the Holder has tendered any Security for repayment pursuant to an Extension Notice, the Holder may by written notice to the Trustees revoke such tender for repayment until the close of business on the tenth day before the Original Stated Maturity.

SECTION 3.09 Persons Deemed Owners.

Prior to due presentment of a Registered Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustees and any agent of the Company or the Trustees may treat the Person in whose name such Registered Security is registered as the owner of such Registered Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of (and premium, if any) and (subject to Sections 3.05 and 3.07) interest, if any, on such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever (other than the payment of Additional Amounts, if any), whether or not such Security be overdue, and none of the Company, the Trustees or any agent of the Company or the Trustees shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

Title to any Bearer Security and any coupons appertaining thereto shall pass by delivery. The Company, the Trustees and any agent of the Company or the Trustees may treat the bearer of any Bearer Security and the bearer of any coupon as the absolute owner of such Security or coupon for the purpose of receiving payment thereof or on account thereof and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not such Security or coupons be overdue, and none of the Company, the Trustees or any agent of the Company or the Trustees shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

None of the Company, the Trustees, any Paying Agent or the Security Registrar will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests of a Security in global form or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, with respect to any global Security, nothing herein shall prevent the Company, the Trustees, or any agent of the Company or the Trustees, from giving effect to any written certification, proxy or other authorization furnished by any depositary, as a Holder, with respect to such global Security or impair, as between such depositary and owners of beneficial interests in such global Security, the operation of customary practices governing the exercise of the rights of such depositary (or its nominee) as Holder of such global Security.

SECTION 3.10 Cancellation.

All Securities and coupons surrendered for payment, redemption, repayment at the option of the Holder, registration of transfer or exchange or for credit against any current or future sinking fund payment shall, if surrendered to any Person other than a Trustee, be delivered to a Trustee. All securities and coupons so delivered to either Trustee shall be promptly cancelled by it. The Company may at any time deliver to either Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and may deliver to either Trustee (or to any other Person for delivery to such Trustee) for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated hereunder which the Company has not issued and sold, and all Securities so delivered shall be promptly cancelled by such Trustee. If the Company shall so acquire any of the Securities, however, such acquisition shall not operate as a redemption or satisfaction of the indebtedness represented by such Securities unless and until the same are surrendered to a Trustee for cancellation. No Securities shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities cancelled as provided in this Section, except as expressly permitted by this Indenture. All cancelled Securities held by a Trustee shall be disposed of by such Trustee in accordance with its customary procedures and certification of their disposal delivered to the Company unless by Company Order the Company shall direct that cancelled Securities be returned to it.

SECTION 3.11 Computation of Interest.

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01 with respect to any Securities, interest, if any, on the Securities of each series shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months. For the purposes of disclosure under the Interest Act (Canada), the yearly rate of interest to which interest calculated under a Security for any period in any calendar year (the "calculation period") is equivalent, is the rate payable under a Security in respect of the calculation period multiplied by a fraction the numerator of which is the actual number of days in such calendar year and the denominator of which is the actual number of days in the calculation period. If the Canadian Trustee is appointed Paying Agent, it shall be entitled to rely on the calculations to be provided by the Company.

SECTION 3.12 Currency and Manner of Payments in Respect of Securities.

(a) With respect to Registered Securities of any series not permitting the election provided for in paragraph (b) below or the Holders of which have not made the election provided for in paragraph (b) below, and with respect to Bearer Securities of any series, except as provided in paragraph (d) below, payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on any Registered or Bearer Security of such series will be made in the Currency in which such Registered Security or Bearer Security, as the case may be, is payable. The provisions of this Section may be modified or superseded with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01.

(b) It may be provided pursuant to Section 3.01 with respect to Registered Securities of any series that Holders shall have the option, subject to paragraphs (d) and (e) below, to receive payments of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on such Registered Securities in any of the Currencies which may be designated for such election by delivering to the Trustees a written election with signature guarantees and in the applicable form established pursuant to Section 3.01, not later than the close of business on the Election Date immediately preceding the applicable payment date. If the Canadian Trustee is appointed Paying Agent, the ability to receive payments of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any in the Currency designated for election will be subject to the Canadian Trustee's ability, as Paying Agent, to accommodate payment in the Currency elected. If a Holder so elects to receive such payments in any such Currency, such election will remain in effect for such Holder or any transferee of such Holder until changed by such Holder or such transferee by written notice to the Trustees (but any such change must be made not later than the close of business on the Election Date immediately preceding the next payment date to be effective for the payment to be made on such payment date and no such change of election may be made with respect to payments to be made on any Registered Security of such series with respect to which an Event of Default has occurred or with respect to which the Company has deposited funds pursuant to Article Four or Fourteen or with respect to which a notice of redemption has been given by the Company or a notice of option to elect repayment has been sent by such Holder or such transferee). Any Holder of any such Registered Security who shall not have delivered any such election to the Trustees not later than the close of business on the applicable Election Date will be paid the amount due on the applicable payment date in the relevant Currency as provided in Section 3.12(a). The Trustees shall notify the Exchange Rate Agent as soon as practicable after the Election Date of the aggregate principal amount of Registered Securities for which Holders have made such written election.

(c) Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, if the election referred to in paragraph (b) above has been provided for pursuant to Section 3.01, then, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, not later than the fourth Business Day after the Election Date for each payment date for Registered Securities of any series, the Exchange Rate Agent will deliver to the Company a written notice specifying, in the Currency in which Registered Securities of such series are payable, the respective aggregate amounts of principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on the Registered Securities to be paid on such payment date, specifying the amounts in such Currency so payable in respect of the Registered Securities as to which the Holders of Registered Securities of such series shall have elected to be paid in another currency as provided in paragraph (b) above. If the election referred to in paragraph (b) above has been provided for pursuant to Section 3.01 and if at least one Holder has made such election, then, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, on the second Business Day preceding such payment date the Company will deliver to the Trustees for such series of Registered Securities an Exchange Rate Officers' Certificate in respect of the Dollar or Foreign Currency payments to be made on such payment date. Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, the Dollar or Foreign Currency amount receivable by Holders of Registered Securities who have elected payment in a Currency as provided in paragraph (b) above shall be determined by the Company on the basis of the applicable Market Exchange Rate in effect on the third Business Day (the "Valuation Date") immediately preceding each payment date, and such determination shall be conclusive and binding for all purposes, absent manifest error.

(d) If a Conversion Event occurs with respect to a Foreign Currency in which any of the Securities are denominated or payable other than pursuant to an election provided for pursuant to paragraph (b) above, then, with respect to each date for the payment of principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on the applicable Securities denominated or payable in such Foreign Currency occurring after the last date on which such Foreign Currency was used (the "Conversion Date"), the Dollar shall be the Currency of payment for use on each such payment date. Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, the Dollar amount to be paid by the Company to the Trustees and by the Trustees or any Paying Agent to the Holders of such Securities with respect to such payment date shall be, in the case of a Foreign Currency other than a currency unit, the Dollar Equivalent of the Foreign Currency or, in the case of a currency unit, the Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit, in each case as determined by the Exchange Rate Agent in the manner provided in paragraph (f) or (g) below.

(e) Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, if the Holder of a Registered Security denominated in any Currency shall have elected to be paid in another Currency as provided in paragraph (b) above, and a Conversion Event occurs with respect to such elected Currency, such Holder shall receive payment in the Currency in which payment would have been made in the absence of such election; and if a Conversion Event occurs with respect to the Currency in which payment would have been made in the absence of such election, such Holder shall receive payment in Dollars as provided in paragraph (d) above.

(f) The "Dollar Equivalent of the Foreign Currency" shall be determined by the Exchange Rate Agent and shall be obtained for each subsequent payment date by converting the specified Foreign Currency into Dollars at the Market Exchange Rate on the Conversion Date.

(g) The "Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit" shall be determined by the Exchange Rate Agent and subject to the provisions of paragraph (h) below shall be the sum of each amount obtained by converting the Specified Amount of each Component Currency into Dollars at the Market Exchange Rate for such Component Currency on the Valuation Date with respect to each payment.

(h) For purposes of this Section the following terms shall have the following meanings:

A "Component Currency" shall mean any Currency which, on the Conversion Date, was a component currency of the relevant currency unit, including, but not limited to, the Euro.

A “Specified Amount” of a Component Currency shall mean the number of units of such Component Currency or fractions thereof which were represented in the relevant currency unit, including, but not limited to, the Euro, on the Conversion Date. If after the Conversion Date the official unit of any Component Currency is altered by way of combination or subdivision, the Specified Amount of such Component Currency shall be divided or multiplied in the same proportion. If after the Conversion Date two or more Component Currencies are consolidated into a single currency, the respective Specified Amounts of such Component Currencies shall be replaced by an amount in such single Currency equal to the sum of the respective Specified Amounts of such consolidated Component Currencies expressed in such single Currency, and such amount shall thereafter be a Specified Amount and such single Currency shall thereafter be a Component Currency. If after the Conversion Date any Component Currency shall be divided into two or more currencies, the Specified Amount of such Component Currency shall be replaced by amounts of such two or more currencies, having an aggregate Dollar Equivalent value at the Market Exchange Rate on the date of such replacement equal to the Dollar Equivalent value of the Specified Amount of such former Component Currency at the Market Exchange Rate immediately before such division and such amounts shall thereafter be Specified Amounts and such currencies shall thereafter be Component Currencies. If, after the Conversion Date of the relevant currency unit, including, but not limited to, the Euro, a Conversion Event (other than any event referred to above in this definition of “Specified Amount”) occurs with respect to any Component Currency of such currency unit and is continuing on the applicable Valuation Date, the Specified Amount of such Component Currency shall, for purposes of calculating the Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit, be converted into Dollars at the Market Exchange Rate in effect on the Conversion Date of such Component Currency.

“Election Date” shall mean the date for any series of Registered Securities as specified pursuant to clause (15) of Section 3.01 by which the written election referred to in paragraph (b) above may be made.

All decisions and determinations of the Exchange Rate Agent regarding the Dollar Equivalent of the Foreign Currency, the Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit, the Market Exchange Rate and changes in the Specified Amounts as specified above shall be in its sole discretion and shall, in the absence of manifest error, be conclusive for all purposes and irrevocably binding upon the Company, the Trustees and all Holders of such Securities denominated or payable in the relevant Currency. The Exchange Rate Agent shall promptly give written notice to the Company and the Trustees of any such decision or determination.

In the event that the Company determines in good faith that a Conversion Event has occurred with respect to a Foreign Currency, the Company will immediately give written notice thereof to the Trustees and to the Exchange Rate Agent (and the Trustees will promptly thereafter give notice in the manner provided for in Section 1.06 to the affected Holders) specifying the Conversion Date. In the event the Company so determines that a Conversion Event has occurred with respect to the Euro or any other currency unit in which Securities are denominated or payable, the Company will immediately give written notice thereof to the Trustees and to the Exchange Rate Agent (and the Trustees will promptly thereafter give notice in the manner provided for in Section 1.06 to the affected Holders) specifying the Conversion Date and the Specified Amount of each Component Currency on the Conversion Date. In the event the Company determines in good faith that any subsequent change in any Component Currency as set forth in the definition of Specified Amount above has occurred, the Company will similarly give written notice to the Trustees and the Exchange Rate Agent.

The Trustees shall be fully justified and protected in relying and acting upon information received by it from the Company and the Exchange Rate Agent and shall not otherwise have any duty or obligation to determine the accuracy or validity of such information independent of the Company or the Exchange Rate Agent.

SECTION 3.13 Appointment and Resignation of Successor Exchange Rate Agent.

(a) Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, if and so long as the Securities of any series (i) are denominated in a Currency other than Dollars or (ii) may be payable in a Currency other than Dollars, or so long as it is required under any other provision of this Indenture, then the Company will maintain with respect to each such series of Securities, or as so required, at least one Exchange Rate Agent. The Company will cause the Exchange Rate Agent to make the necessary foreign exchange determinations at the time and in the manner specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the purpose of determining the applicable rate of exchange and, if applicable, for the purpose of converting the issued Currency into the applicable payment Currency for the payment of principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, pursuant to Section 3.12.

(b) No resignation of the Exchange Rate Agent and no appointment of a successor Exchange Rate Agent pursuant to this Section shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Exchange Rate Agent as evidenced by a written instrument delivered to the Company and the Trustees.

(c) If the Exchange Rate Agent shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of the Exchange Rate Agent for any cause with respect to the Securities of one or more series, the Company, by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Exchange Rate Agent or Exchange Rate Agents with respect to the Securities of that or those series (it being understood that any such successor Exchange Rate Agent may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such series and that, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, at any time there shall only be one Exchange Rate Agent with respect to the Securities of any particular series that are originally issued by the Company on the same date and that are initially denominated and/or payable in the same Currency).

ARTICLE FOUR SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE

SECTION 4.01 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.

This Indenture shall upon Company Request cease to be of further effect with respect to any series of Securities specified in such Company Request (except as to any surviving rights of registration of transfer or exchange of Securities of such series expressly provided for herein or pursuant hereto and any right to receive Additional Amounts as contemplated by Section 10.05) and the Trustees, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such series when

(1) either

(a) all Securities of such series theretofore authenticated and delivered and all coupons, if any, appertaining thereto (other than (i) coupons appertaining to Bearer Securities surrendered for exchange for Registered Securities and maturing after such exchange, whose surrender is not required or has been waived as provided in Section 3.05, (ii) Securities and coupons of such series which have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 3.06, (iii) coupons appertaining to Securities called for redemption and maturing after the relevant Redemption Date, whose surrender has been waived as provided in Section 11.06, and (iv) Securities and coupons of such series for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust with either Trustee or any Paying Agent or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company, as provided in Section 10.03) have been delivered to either Trustee for cancellation; or

(b) all Securities of such series and, in the case of (i) or (ii) below, any coupons appertaining thereto not theretofore delivered to either Trustee for cancellation

- (i) have become due and payable, or
- (ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or
- (iii) if redeemable at the option of the Company, are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustees for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustees in the name, and at the expense, of the Company,

and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) above, has irrevocably deposited or caused to be deposited with either Trustee as trust funds in trust for such purpose an amount in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable, sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to such Trustee for cancellation, for principal (and premium, if any), interest, if any, and Additional Amounts, if any, to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable) or to the Stated Maturity or Redemption Date, as the case may be;

- (2) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company; and
- (3) the Company has delivered to the Trustees an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such series have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the obligations of the Company to the Trustees under Section 6.07, the obligations of the Trustees to any Authenticating Agent under Section 6.12 and, if money shall have been deposited with the Trustees pursuant to subclause (b) of clause (1) of this Section, the obligations of the Trustees under Section 4.02 and the last paragraph of Section 10.03 shall survive.

SECTION 4.02 Application of Trust Money.

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 10.03, all money deposited with the Trustees pursuant to Section 4.01 shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities, the coupons and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustees may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, for whose payment such money has been deposited with the Trustees; but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

ARTICLE FIVE
REMEDIES

SECTION 5.01 Events of Default.

“Event of Default”, wherever used herein with respect to Securities of any series, means any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body), unless such event is specifically deleted or modified in or pursuant to a supplemental indenture, Board Resolution or Officers’ Certificate establishing the terms of such series pursuant to Section 3.01 of this indenture:

- (1) default in the payment of any interest (including Additional Amounts) due on any Security of that series, or any related coupon, when such interest or coupon becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or
- (2) default in the payment of the principal (or premium, if any), or any Additional Amounts in respect of any Security of that series at its Maturity; or
- (3) default in the deposit of any sinking fund or analogous payment when due by the terms of any Security of that series and Article Twelve; or
- (4) default in the performance, or breach, of any of the covenants contained in Article Eight of this Indenture and the continuance of such default or breach for a period of 30 days; or
- (5) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or agreement of the Company in this Indenture which affects or is applicable to the Securities of that series (other than a covenant or agreement, a default in whose performance or whose breach is elsewhere in this Section specifically dealt with), and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 60 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustees or to the Company and the Trustees by the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities of that series a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a “Notice of Default” hereunder; or
- (6) if an event of default (as defined in any indenture or instrument under which the Company or any Subsidiary has at the time of this Indenture or shall thereafter have outstanding any indebtedness) shall have occurred and be continuing, or the Company or any Subsidiary shall have failed to pay principal amounts with respect to such indebtedness at maturity and such event of default or failure to pay shall have resulted in indebtedness under such indentures or instruments being declared due, payable or otherwise being accelerated, in either event so that an amount in excess of the greater of \$5,000,000 and 2% of Shareholders’ Equity shall be or become due, payable and accelerated upon such declaration or prior to the date on which the same would otherwise have become due, payable and accelerated (the “accelerated indebtedness”), and such acceleration shall not be rescinded or annulled, or such event of default or failure to pay under such indenture or instrument shall not be remedied or cured, whether by payment or otherwise, or waived by the holders of such accelerated indebtedness, then

(a) the accelerated indebtedness shall be as a result of an event of default which is not related to the failure to pay principal or interest on the terms, at the times, and on the conditions set out in any such indenture or instrument, it shall not be considered an Event of Default for purposes of this Indenture until 30 days after such indebtedness has been accelerated, or

(b) if the accelerated indebtedness shall occur as a result of such failure to pay principal or interest or as a result of an event of default which is related to the failure to pay principal or interest on the terms, at the times, and on the conditions set out in any such indenture or instrument, then (i) if such accelerated indebtedness is, by its terms, Non-Recourse Debt to the Company or a Subsidiary, it shall not be considered an Event of Default for purposes of this Indenture; or (ii) if such accelerated indebtedness is recourse to the Company or a Subsidiary, any requirement in connection with such failure to pay or event of default for the giving of notice or the lapse of time or the happening of any further condition, event or act under such other indenture or instrument in connection with such failure to pay or event of default shall be applicable together with an additional seven days before being considered an Event of Default for purposes of this Indenture; or

- (7) the entry of a decree or order by a court having jurisdiction in the premises adjudging the Company bankrupt or insolvent, or approving as properly filed a petition seeking reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition of or in respect of the Company under or subject to the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act (Canada), the Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act (Canada), the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code or any other federal, provincial, state or foreign bankruptcy, insolvency or analogous laws, or the issuance of a sequestration order or the (appointment of a receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Company or in receipt of any substantial part of the property of the Company, and any such decree, order or appointment continues unstayed and in effect for a period of 90 consecutive days; or
- (8) the institution by the Company of proceedings to be adjudicated bankrupt or insolvent, or the consent by it to the institution of bankruptcy or insolvency proceedings against it, or the filing by it of a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief under or subject to the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act (Canada), the Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act (Canada), the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code or any other federal, provincial, state or foreign bankruptcy, insolvency or analogous laws or the consent by it to the filing of any such petition or to the appointment of a receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Company or of any substantial part of its property, or the making by it of a general assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the admission by it in writing of its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due or the taking by it of corporate action in furtherance of any of the aforesaid purposes; or

- (9) any other Event of Default provided with respect to Securities of that series.

SECTION 5.02 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment.

If an Event of Default described in clause (1), (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) or (9) of Section 5.01 with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs and is continuing, then in every such case, either Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series, may declare the principal amount (or, if the Securities of that series are Original Issue Discount Securities or Indexed Securities, such portion of the principal amount as may be specified in the terms of that series) of all of the Securities of that series and all interest thereon to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustees if given by Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal amount (or specified portion thereof) shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default specified in Section 5.01(7) or 5.01(8) occurs and is continuing, then the principal amount of all the Securities shall ipso facto become and be immediately due and payable without any declaration or other act on the part of the Trustees or any Holder.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration with respect to Securities of any series (or of all series, as the case may be) has been made and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by either Trustee as hereinafter provided in this Article, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series (or of all series, as the case may be), by written notice to the Company and the Trustees, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if

- (1) the Company has paid or deposited with either Trustee a sum sufficient to pay in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 3.12(b), 3.12(d) and 3.12(e)),

(a) all overdue interest, if any, on all Outstanding Securities of that series (or of all series, as the case may be) and any related coupons,

(b) all unpaid principal of (and premium, if any, on) any Outstanding Securities of that series (or of all series, as the case may be) which has become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration, and interest on such unpaid principal (and premium, if any) at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities,

(c) to the extent that payment of such interest is legally enforceable, interest on overdue interest at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and

(d) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustees hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustees, their agents and counsel; and

- (2) all Events of Default with respect to Securities of that series (or of all series, as the case may be), other than the non-payment of amounts of principal of (or premium, if any, on) or interest on Securities of that series (or of all series, as the case may be) which have become due solely by such declaration of acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in Section 5.13.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

SECTION 5.03 Collection of Debt and Suits for Enforcement by Trustees.

The Company covenants that if

- (1) default is made in the payment of any installment of interest on any Security and any related coupon when such interest becomes due and payable and such default continues for a period of 30 days, or
- (2) default is made in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security at the Maturity thereof,

then the Company will, upon demand of either Trustee, pay to the U.S. Trustee for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities and coupons, the whole amount then due and payable on such Securities and coupons for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, and interest on any overdue principal (and premium, if any) and on any overdue interest, at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustees, their agents and counsel.

If the Company fails to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, each of the Trustees, in its own name as trustee of an express trust, may institute a judicial proceeding for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, may prosecute such proceeding to judgment or final decree and may enforce the same against the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities and collect the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities, wherever situated.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series (or of all series, as the case may be) occurs and is continuing, either Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series (or of all series, as the case may be) by such appropriate judicial proceedings as such Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

SECTION 5.04 Trustees May File Proofs of Claim.

In case of the pendency of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, adjustment, composition or other judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or the property of the Company or of such other obligor or their creditors, each Trustee (irrespective of whether the principal of the Securities shall then be due and payable as therein expressed or by declaration or otherwise and irrespective of whether either Trustee shall have made any demand on the Company for the payment of overdue principal, premium, if any, or interest) shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceeding or otherwise,

- (i) to file and prove a claim for the whole amount of principal (and premium, if any), or such portion of the principal amount of any series of Original Issue Discount Securities or Indexed Securities as may be specified in the terms of such series, and interest, if any, owing and unpaid in respect of the Securities and to file such other papers or documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of such Trustee (including any claim for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of such Trustee, its agents and counsel) and of the Holders allowed in such judicial proceeding, and
- (ii) to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same;

and any custodian, receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator or other similar official in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Holder to make such payments to such Trustee and, in the event that such Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Holders, to pay to such Trustee any amount due to it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of each Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due to such Trustee under Section 6.07.

Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize the Trustees to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof or to authorize the Trustees to vote in respect of the claim of any Holder in any such proceeding.

SECTION 5.05 Trustees May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities.

All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or the Securities or coupons may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustees without the possession of any of the Securities or coupons or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by a Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of such Trustee, its agents and counsel, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities and coupons in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

SECTION 5.06 Application of Money Collected.

Any money collected by a Trustee pursuant to this Article shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustees and, in case of the distribution of such money on account or principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, upon presentation of the Securities or coupons, or both, as the case may be, and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

First: to the payment of all amounts due the Trustees under Section 6.07;

Second: to the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid for principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on the Securities and coupons in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities and coupons for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, respectively; and

Third: the balance, if any, to the Person or Persons entitled thereto.

SECTION 5.07 Limitation on Suits.

No Holder of any Security of any series or any related coupons shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless

- (1) such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustees of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of that series;
- (2) the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (1), (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) or (9) of Section 5.01, or, in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (7) or (8) of Section 5.01, the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities, shall have made written request to the Trustees to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in their own names as Trustees hereunder;
- (3) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustees reasonable indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;
- (4) the Trustees for 60 days after their receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity have failed to institute any such proceeding; and
- (5) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustees during such 60-day period by the Holders of a majority or more in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (1), (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) or (9) of Section 5.01, or in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (7) or (8) of Section 5.01, by the Holders of a majority or more in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities;

it being understood and intended that no one or more of such Holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other Holders of Securities of the same series, in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (1), (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) or (9) of Section 5.01, or of Holders of all Securities in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (7) or (8) of Section 5.01, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and ratable benefit of all Holders of Securities of the same series, in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (1), (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) or (9) of Section 5.01, or of Holders of all Securities' in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (7) or (8) of Section 5.01.

SECTION 5.08 Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest.

Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment, as provided herein (including, if applicable, Article Fourteen) and in such Security, of the principal of (and premium, if any) and (subject to Section 3.07) interest, if any, on, such Security or payment of such coupon on the respective Stated Maturities expressed in such Security or coupon (or, in the case of redemption, on the Redemption Date) and subject to the limitations on a Holder's ability to institute suit contained Section 5.07, to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment, and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

SECTION 5.09 Restoration of Rights and Remedies.

If either Trustee or any Holder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or has been determined adversely to such Trustee or to such Holder, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceeding, the Company, the Trustees and the Holders of Securities and coupons shall be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustees and the Holders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

SECTION 5.10 Rights and Remedies Cumulative.

Except as otherwise provided with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities or coupons in the last paragraph of Section 3.06, no right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustees or to the Holders of Securities or coupons is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

SECTION 5.11 Delay or Omission Not Waiver.

No delay or omission of the Trustees or of any Holder of any Security or coupon to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustees or to the Holders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustees or by the Holders, as the case may be.

SECTION 5.12 Control by Holders.

With respect to the Securities of any series, the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustees, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustees, relating to or arising under clause (1), (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) or (9) of Section 5.01, and, with respect to all Securities, the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustees, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustees, not relating to or arising under clause (1), (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) or (9) of Section 5.01, provided that in each case

- (1) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture,
- (2) the Trustees may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustees which is not inconsistent with such direction, and
- (3) the Trustees need not take any action which might involve them in personal liability or be unjustly prejudicial to the Holders of Securities of such series not consenting.

SECTION 5.13 Waiver of Past Defaults.

Subject to Section 5.02, the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive any past default described in clause (1), (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) or (9) of Section 5.01 (or, in the case of a default described in clause (7) or (8) of Section 5.01, the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities may waive any such past default), and its consequences, except a default

- (1) in respect of the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Security or any related coupon, or
- (2) in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under Article Nine cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each outstanding Security of such series affected.

Upon any such waiver, any such default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or Event of Default or impair any right consequent thereon.

SECTION 5.14 Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws.

The Company covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any stay or extension law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, which may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Company (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustees, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

SECTION 5.15 Undertaking for Costs.

In any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against either Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it as Trustee, a court may require any party litigant in such suit to file an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and may assess costs against any such party litigant, in the manner and to the extent provided in Trust Indenture Legislation; provided, however, that neither this Section nor the provisions of Section 315(e) of the Trust Indenture Act shall apply to any suit instituted by either Trustee or by any Holder or group of Holders holding more than 10% in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities or by any Holder of any Security on any suit for the enforcement of the right to receive the principal of and interest (including any Additional Amounts) on any such Securities.

ARTICLE SIX THE TRUSTEES

SECTION 6.01 Notice of Defaults.

Each Trustee shall promptly give the other Trustee notice of any Default or Event of Default known to it. Within a reasonable time, but no more than 30 days after either Trustee has knowledge of any Default hereunder with respect to the Securities of any series, one or both of the Trustees shall transmit in the manner and to the extent provided in Trust Indenture Legislation, notice of such Default hereunder known to either Trustee, unless such Default shall have been cured or waived (and, in the case where such Default shall have been cured, the Trustees shall notify the Holders in writing of such cure in writing within a reasonable time, but not exceeding 30 days, after the Trustees have become aware that the Default has been cured); provided, however, that, except in the case of a Default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Security of such series or in the payment of any sinking fund installment with respect to Securities of such series, the Trustees shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the board of directors, the executive committee or a trust committee of directors and/or Responsible Officers of each Trustee in good faith determine that the withholding of such notice is in the interest of the Holders of Securities of such series and any related coupons and so advises the Company in writing; and provided further that in the case of any Default of the character specified in Section 5.01(5) with respect to Securities of such series, no such notice to Holders shall be given until at least 10 days after the occurrence thereof.

SECTION 6.02 Certain Duties and Responsibilities of Trustees.

(a) The Trustees, prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default and after the curing of all Events of Default that may have occurred, shall undertake to perform with respect to the Securities of any series such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustees.

(b) In all instances, in the exercise of the powers, rights, duties and obligations prescribed or conferred by the terms of this Indenture, each Trustee shall act honestly and in good faith with a view to the best interests of the Holders and exercise that degree of care, diligence and skill that a reasonably prudent trustee in respect of indentures for the purpose of issuing corporate debt obligations would exercise in comparable circumstances.

(c) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve each Trustee from liability for its own actions or failure to act in accordance with Subsection 6.02(b), except that:

- (i) prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default and after the curing or waiving of all such Events of Default that may have occurred:
 - (A) the duties and obligations of each Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall be determined solely by the express provisions of this Indenture, and the Trustees shall not be liable except for the performance of such duties and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustees; and
 - (B) in the absence of bad faith on the part of either Trustee, such Trustee may conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon any certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustees and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture and Trust Indenture Legislation; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions that by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustees, the Trustees shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture; provided, however, the Canadian Trustee shall not be required to determine whether the certificates or opinions presented to it conform to the TIA and the U.S. Trustee shall not be required to determine whether the certificates or opinions presented to it conform to Canadian Trust Indenture Legislation.
- (ii) the Trustees shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer of such Trustee, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee failed to act in accordance with Subsection 6.02(b) in ascertaining the pertinent facts;
- (iii) the Trustees shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by them in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustees, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustees under this Indenture;
- (iv) none of the provisions contained in this Indenture shall require either Trustee to expend or risk their own funds or otherwise incur personal or any financial liability in the performance of any of their duties or in the exercise of any of their rights or powers, if there is reasonable ground for believing that the repayment of such funds or liability' is not reasonably assured to them under the terms of this Indenture or adequate indemnity against such risk is not reasonably assured to them; and

- (v) whether or not therein expressly so provided, except to the extent expressly provided herein to the contrary, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or effecting the liability or affording protection to the Trustees shall be subject to the provisions of this Section.

(d) Notwithstanding the provisions of this Section 6.02 or any provision in this Indenture or in the Securities, the Trustees will not be charged with knowledge of the existence of any Event of Default or any other fact that would prohibit the making of any payment of monies to or by the Trustees, or the taking of any other action by the Trustees, unless and until the Trustees have received written notice thereof from the Company or any Holder.

SECTION 6.03 Certain Rights of Trustees.

Subject to the provisions of TIA Sections 315(a) through 315(d):

- (1) the Trustees may rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document believed by them to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;
- (2) any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order and any resolution of the Board of Directors may be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution;
- (3) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustees shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, each Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely upon an Officers' Certificate;
- (4) the Trustees may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or any opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by them hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;
- (5) the Trustees shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders of Securities of any series or any related coupons pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustees reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by them in compliance with such request or direction;
- (6) the Trustees shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document, but the Trustees, in their discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as they may see fit, and, if the Trustees shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, they shall be entitled to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney;

- (7) in an Event of Default, the Trustees' powers shall not be infringed upon so long as they act in accordance with Subsection 6.02(b);
- (8) the Trustees may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustees shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by them hereunder; and
- (9) the Trustees shall not be liable for any action taken, suffered or omitted by them in good faith and believed by them to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon them by this Indenture.

SECTION 6.04 Trustees Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities.

The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except for a Trustee's certificates of authentication, and in any coupons shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and neither Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent assumes any responsibility for their correctness. The Trustees make no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities or coupons, except that the Trustees represent that they are duly authorized to execute and deliver this Indenture, authenticate the Securities and perform their obligations hereunder and that the statements made by the U.S. Trustee in a Statement of Eligibility on Form T-1 supplied to the Company are true and accurate, subject to the qualifications set forth therein. Neither Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent shall be accountable for the use or application by the Company of Securities or the proceeds thereof. Nothing herein contained will impose on either Trustee any obligation to see to, or to require evidence of, the registration or filing (or renewal thereof) of this Indenture or any supplemental indenture. The Trustees shall not be bound to give notice to any person of the execution hereof.

SECTION 6.05 May Hold Securities.

The Trustees, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, any Security Registrar or any other agent of the Company or of the Trustees, in their individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and coupons and, subject to TIA Sections 310(b) and 311, may otherwise deal with the Company, including, without limitation, as a creditor of the Company, with the same rights they would have if they were not Trustees, Authenticating Agent, Paying Agent, Security Registrar or such other agent. A Trustee that has resigned or was removed shall remain subject to TIA Section 311(a) to the extent provided therein.

SECTION 6.06 Money Held in Trust.

Money held by the Trustees in trust hereunder need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustees shall be under no liability for interest on any money received by them hereunder except as otherwise agreed with the Company.

SECTION 6.07 Compensation and Reimbursement.

The Company agrees:

- (1) to pay to the Trustees from time to time reasonable compensation for all services rendered by them hereunder (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust); any invoices which remain outstanding for 30 days following the date of invoice shall accrue interest at the then current rate of interest charged by the Canadian Trustee to its corporate clients;
- (2) except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to reimburse the Trustees upon their request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustees in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of their agents and counsel), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may be attributable to their negligence or bad faith; and
- (3) to indemnify the Trustees for, and to hold them and their directors, officers, agents, representatives, successors, assigns and employees harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence or bad faith on their part, arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of the trust or trusts hereunder, including reasonable attorneys' fees and other reasonable costs and expenses of defending themselves against any claim or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of their powers or duties hereunder.

The obligations of the Company under this Section to compensate the Trustees, to pay or reimburse the Trustees for expenses, disbursements and advances and to indemnify and hold harmless the Trustees shall constitute additional indebtedness hereunder and shall survive the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture and the resignation or removal of the Trustee. As security for the performance of such obligations of the Company, the Trustees shall have a claim prior to the Securities upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustees as such, except funds held in trust for the payment of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on particular Securities or any coupons.

When the Trustees incur expenses or render services in connection with an Event of Default specified in Section 5.01(7) or (8), the expenses (including reasonable charges and expense of its counsel) of and the compensation for such services are intended to constitute expenses of administration under any applicable U.S. or Canadian federal, state or provincial bankruptcy, insolvency or other similar law.

The provisions of this Section shall survive the termination of this Indenture.

SECTION 6.08 Corporate Trustees Required; Eligibility.

- (1) There shall be at all times a U.S. Trustee hereunder which shall be eligible to act as Trustee under TIA Section 310(a)(1) and, together with its immediate parent, shall have a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50,000,000. If U.S. Trustee publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of U.S. federal, state, territorial or District of Columbia supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of U.S. Trustee shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time the U.S. Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect hereinafter specified in this Article.
- (2) For so long as required by Trust Indenture Legislation, there shall be a Canadian Trustee under this Indenture. The Canadian Trustee shall at all times be a resident or authorized to do business in the Province of Ontario and any other province in Canada where Holders may be resident from time to time. The Canadian Trustee represents and warrants that no material conflict of interest exists in the Canadian Trustee's role as a fiduciary hereunder and agrees that in the event of a material conflict of interest arising hereafter it will, within 30 days after ascertaining that it has such material conflict of interest, either eliminate the same or resign its trust hereunder. If any such material conflict of interests exists or hereafter shall exist, the validity and enforceability of this Indenture shall not be affected in any manner whatsoever by reason thereof.
- (3) [intentionally omitted]
- (4) The Trustees will not be required to give any bond or security in respect of the execution of the trusts and powers set out in this Indenture or otherwise in respect of the premises.
- (5) Neither Trustee nor any Affiliate of either Trustee shall be appointed a receiver or receiver and manager or liquidator of all or any part of the assets or undertaking of the Company.

SECTION 6.09 Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor.

- (1) No resignation or removal of either Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 6.10.
- (2) Either Trustee may resign at any time with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company. If the instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee required by Section 6.10 shall not have been delivered to such Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

- (3) Either Trustee may be removed at any time with respect to the Securities of any series by Act of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series, delivered to such Trustee and to the Company.
- (4) If at any time:
- (a) either Trustee shall acquire any conflicting interest as defined in TIA Section 310(b) and fail to comply with the provisions of TIA Section 310(b)(i), or
 - (b) either Trustee shall fail to comply with the provisions of TIA Section 310(b) after written request therefor by the Company or by any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months, or
 - (c) either Trustee shall cease to be eligible under Section 6.08 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months, or
 - (d) either Trustee shall become incapable of acting or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of such Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge or control of such Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation,

then, in any such case, (i) the Company, by a Board Resolution, may remove such Trustee with respect to all Securities, or (ii) subject to TIA Section 315(e), any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of such Trustee with respect to all Securities of such series and the appointment of a successor Trustee or Trustees.

(5) If either Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of the U.S. Trustee or the Canadian Trustee for any cause, with respect to the Securities of one or more series, the Company, by a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee or Trustees with respect to the Securities of that or those series (it being understood that any such successor Trustee may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such series) provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to appoint a successor Trustee to the Canadian Trustee if the Canadian Trustee resigns or is removed and a Canadian Trustee under this Indenture is no longer required under Trust Indenture Legislation. If, within one year after such resignation, removal or incapability, or the occurrence of such vacancy, a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall be appointed by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Company and the retiring Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment, become the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and to that extent supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company. If no successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Holders and accepted appointment in the manner hereinafter provided, any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

- (6) The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of a Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series to the Holders of Securities of such series in the manner provided for in Section 1.06. Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and the address of its Corporate Trust Office.
- (7) If a Canadian Trustee under this Indenture is no longer required by Trust Indenture Legislation, then the Company by a Board Resolution may remove the Canadian Trustee.

SECTION 6.10 Acceptance of Appointment by Successor.

- (1) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor Trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder.

- (2) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor Trustee shall accept such appointment and which (1) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor Trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates, (2) if the retiring Trustee is not retiring with respect to all Securities, shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (3) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein and each such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates. Whenever there is a successor Trustee with respect to one or more (but less than all) series of Securities issued pursuant to this Indenture, the terms "Indenture" and "Securities" shall have the meanings specified in the provisos to the respective definitions of those terms in Section 1.01 which contemplate such situation.
- (3) Upon request of any such successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all rights, powers and trusts referred to in paragraph (a) or (b) of this Section, as the case may be.
- (4) No successor Trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article.

SECTION 6.11 Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.

Any corporation into which either Trustee or its corporate trust business may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which either Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all the corporate trust business of either Trustee, shall be the successor of such Trustee hereunder, provided such corporation shall be otherwise qualified and eligible under this Article, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by a Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities. In case any of the Securities shall not have been authenticated by such predecessor Trustee, any successor Trustee may authenticate such Securities either in the name of any predecessor hereunder or in the name of the successor Trustee. In all such cases such certificates shall have the full force and effect which this Indenture provides for the certificate of authentication of such Trustee; provided, however, that the right to adopt the certificate of authentication of any predecessor Trustee or to authenticate Securities in the name of any predecessor Trustee shall apply only to its successor or successors by merger, conversion or consolidation.

SECTION 6.12 Appointment of Authenticating Agent.

At any time when any of the Securities remain outstanding, the Trustees may appoint an Authenticating Agent or Agents, with respect to one or more series of Securities which shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustees to authenticate Securities of such series and the Trustees shall give written notice of such appointment to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve, in the manner provided for in Section 1.06. Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Appropriate Trustee hereunder. Any such appointment shall be evidenced by an instrument in writing signed by a Responsible Officer of the Trustees, and a copy of such instrument shall be promptly furnished to the Company. In the case of the Canadian Trustee, the instrument appointing an Authenticating Agent shall be signed on behalf of the Trustee by the board of directors or any two of Chairman of the Board, President, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Treasurer, Secretary, Executive Vice Presidents, Senior Vice Presidents, Regional Vice Presidents or Vice Presidents, in accordance with their by-laws. Wherever reference is made in this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustees or either Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustees by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustees by an Authenticating Agent. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall at all times be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America, any state thereof or the District of Columbia or the laws of Canada or any province thereof, authorized under such laws to act as Authenticating Agent, having a combined capital and surplus of not less than \$25,000,000 and subject to supervision or examination by U.S. federal or state or Canadian federal or provincial authority. If such corporation publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of said supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such corporation shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section.

Any corporation into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, provided such corporation shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustees or the Authenticating Agent.

An Authenticating Agent may resign at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Trustees and to the Company. The Trustees may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice thereof to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon receiving such a notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustees may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent which shall be acceptable to the Company and shall give written notice of such appointment to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve, in the manner provided for in Section 1.06. Any successor Authenticating Agent upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this Section.

The Trustees agree to pay to each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation for its services under this Section, and the Trustees shall be entitled to be reimbursed for such payments, subject to the provisions of Section 6.07.

If an appointment with respect to one or more series is made pursuant to this Section, the Securities of such series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to either Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternate certificate of authentication in the following form:

(Certificate of Authentication may be executed by either Trustee)

, as U.S. Trustee, certifies that this is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

Dated:

as U.S. Trustee

By: _____
As Authenticating Agent

By: _____
Authorized Officer

, as Canadian Trustee, certifies that this is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

Dated:

as Canadian Trustee

By: _____
As Authenticating Agent

By: _____
Authorized Officer

SECTION 6.13 Joint Trustees.

The rights, powers, duties and obligations conferred and imposed upon the Trustees are conferred and imposed upon and shall be exercised and performed by the U.S. Trustee and the Canadian Trustee individually, except to the extent the Trustees are required under Trust Indenture Legislation to perform such acts jointly, and neither Trustee shall be liable or responsible for the acts or omissions of the other Trustee. If the U.S. Trustee and Canadian Trustee are unable to agree jointly to act or refrain from acting, the Appropriate Trustee shall make the decision in accordance with its applicable legislation. Unless the context implies or requires otherwise, any written notice, request, direction, certificate, instruction, opinion or other document (each such document, a "Writing") delivered pursuant to any provision of this Indenture to any of the U.S. Trustee or the Canadian Trustee shall be deemed for all purposes of this Indenture as delivery of such Writing to the Trustee. Each such trustee in receipt of such writing shall notify such other trustee of its receipt of such Writing within two Business Days of such receipt provided, however, that any failure of such trustee in receipt of such Writing to so notify such other trustee shall not be deemed as a deficiency in the delivery of such Writing to the Trustee.

SECTION 6.14 Other Rights of Trustees.

Each Trustee shall retain the right not to act and shall not be liable for refusing to act if, due to a lack of information or for any other reason whatsoever, either Trustee, in its sole judgment, determines that such act might cause it to be in non-compliance with any applicable anti-money laundering or anti-terrorist legislation, regulation or guideline. Further, should either Trustee, in its sole judgment, determine at any time that its acting under this Indenture has resulted in its being in non-compliance with any applicable anti-money laundering or anti-terrorist legislation, regulation or guideline, then it shall have the right to resign on 10 days written notice to all parties provided (i) that such Trustee's written notice shall describe the circumstances of such non-compliance; and (ii) that if such circumstances are rectified to such Trustee's satisfaction within such 10 day period, then such resignation shall not be effective.

The parties hereto acknowledge that Canadian federal and provincial legislation addressing the protection of individuals' personal information (collectively, "Privacy Laws") applies to obligations and activities under this Indenture. Despite any other provision of this Indenture, neither party shall take or direct any action that would contravene, or cause the other to contravene, applicable Privacy Laws. The Company, prior to transferring, or causing to be transferred, personal information to the Canadian Trustee, shall obtain and retain required consents of the relevant individuals to the collection, use and disclosure of their personal information, or shall have determined that such consents either have been previously given and can be relied on or are not required under Privacy Laws. The Canadian Trustee shall use commercially reasonable efforts to ensure that its services hereunder comply with Privacy Laws. Specifically, the Trustee agrees to (i) have designated a chief privacy officer; (ii) maintain policies and procedures to protect personal information and to receive and respond to any privacy complaint or inquiry; (iii) use personal information solely for the purposes of providing its services under or ancillary to this Indenture and not to use it for any other purpose except with the consent and direction of the Company; (iv) not sell or otherwise improperly disclose personal information to any third party; and (v) use employee administrative, physical and technological safeguards to reasonably secure and protect personal information against loss, theft or unauthorized access, use or modification.

It is expressly acknowledged and agreed that the Canadian Trustee may, in the course of providing services hereunder, collect or receive, use and disclose financial and other personal information about such parties and/or their representatives, as individuals, or about other individuals related to the subject matter hereof, and use such information for the following purposes:

- (i) to provide the services required under this Indenture and other services that may be requested from time to time;
- (ii) to help the Canadian Trustee manage its servicing relationships with such individuals;
- (iii) to meet the Canadian Trustee's legal and regulatory requirements; and
- (iv) if social insurance numbers are collected by the Canadian Trustee, to perform tax reporting and to assist in verification of an individual's identity for security purposes.

Further, each party agrees that it shall not provide or cause to be provided to the Canadian Trustee any personal information relating to an individual who is not a party to this Indenture unless that party has assured itself that such individual understands and has consented to the aforementioned uses and disclosures. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, the Company and the Trustees may, without liability, disclose information about the Holders and Beneficial Owners or Potential Holders or Beneficial Owners of the Securities pursuant to subpoena or other order issued by a court of competent jurisdiction or when otherwise required by applicable law.

Unless otherwise notified, the Trustees shall be entitled to assume that all payments have been made by the Company as required under this Indenture.

The Trustees may assume for the purposes of this Indenture that any address on the register of the Holders of the Securities is the holder's actual address and is also determinative as to residency.

The Trustees shall have no obligation to ensure or verify compliance with any applicable laws or regulatory requirements on the issue, exercise or transfer of any Securities provided such issue, exercise or transfer, as the case may be, is effected in accordance with the terms of this Indenture. The Trustees shall be entitled to process all transfers of Securities upon the presumption that such transfers are permissible pursuant to all applicable laws and regulatory requirements. The Trustees shall have no obligation to ensure that legends appearing on the Securities certificates comply with regulatory requirements or securities laws of any applicable jurisdiction.

Except as provided in this Indenture, the Trustees shall retain the right not to act and shall not be held liable for refusing to act unless it has received clear and reasonable documentation which complies with the terms of this Indenture; such document must not require the exercise of any discretion or independent judgment.

Each Trustee hereby accepts the trusts in this Indenture declared and provided for and agrees to perform the same upon the terms and conditions herein set forth and to hold all rights, privileges and benefits conferred hereby and by law in trust for the various persons who shall from time to time be holders, subject to all the terms and conditions herein set forth.

ARTICLE SEVEN
HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY

SECTION 7.01 Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders.

The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee (1) not more than 15 days after each Regular Record Date a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of Holders as of such Regular Record Date; provided, however, that the Company shall not be obligated to furnish or cause to be furnished such list at any time that the list shall not differ in any respect from the most recent list furnished to the Trustee by the Company and at such times as the Trustee is acting as Security Registrar for the applicable series of Securities and (2) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished.

SECTION 7.02 Preservation of List of Names and Addresses of Holders.

The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, all information as to the names and addresses of the Holders contained in the most recent list furnished to it as provided in Section 7.1 and as to the names and addresses of Holders received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar for the applicable series of Securities (if acting in such capacity).

The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 7.1 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

Holders may communicate as provided in TIA Section 312(b) with other Holders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities.

SECTION 7.03 Disclosure of Names and Addresses of Holders.

Every Holder of Securities or coupons, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustees that none of the Company or the Trustees or any agent of either of them shall be held accountable by reason of the disclosure of any such information as to the names and addresses of the Holders in accordance with TIA Section 312 or Section 85 of the CBCA, R.S.C. 1985, c. C-44, regardless of the source from which such information was derived, and that the Trustees shall not be held accountable by reason of mailing any material pursuant to a request made under TIA Section 312(b).

SECTION 7.04 Reports by Trustees.

- (1) Within 60 days after May 15 of each year commencing with the first year after the first issuance of Securities pursuant to this Indenture, the U.S. Trustee shall transmit to the Holders of Securities, in the manner and to the extent provided in Section 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act, a brief report dated as of such reporting date, if required by Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act.
- (2) The Trustees shall comply with Sections 313(b) and 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act.

- (3) A copy of such report shall, at the time of such transmission to the Holders, be filed by the U.S. Trustee with the Company (Attention: Chief Financial Officer), with each securities exchange upon which any of the Securities are listed (if so listed) and also with the Commission. The Company agrees to notify the Trustees when the Securities become listed on any securities exchange.

SECTION 7.05 Reports by the Company.

- (1) The Company will file with the Trustee, within 20 days after filing with or furnish to the SEC, copies of its annual reports and of the information, documents and other reports (or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the SEC may by rules and regulations prescribe) which the Company is required to file or furnish with the SEC pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the U.S. Securities Exchange Act.

Notwithstanding that the Company may not remain subject to the reporting requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the U.S. Securities Exchange Act or otherwise report on an annual and quarterly basis on forms provided for such annual and quarterly reporting pursuant to rules and regulations promulgated by the SEC, the Company will continue to provide the Trustee:

- within 20 days after the time periods required for the filing or furnishing of such forms by the SEC, annual reports on Form 40-F, Form 20-F or Form 10-K, as applicable, or any successor form; and
- within 20 days after the time periods required for the filing of such forms by the SEC, reports on Form 6-K or Form 10-Q, as applicable, or any successor form, which, regardless of applicable requirements shall, at a minimum, contain such information required to be provided in quarterly reports under the laws of Canada or any province thereof to security holders of a corporation with securities listed on the TSX, whether or not the Company has any of the Securities listed on such exchange. Each of such reports, to the extent permitted by the rules and regulations of the SEC, will be prepared in accordance with Canadian disclosure requirements and generally accepted accounting principles provided, however, that the Company shall not be obligated to file or furnish such reports with the SEC if the SEC does not permit such filings.

The Trustee shall only be required to hold the information, documentation and reports and the Company acknowledges that in no case shall the Trustee be considered to have analyzed or interpreted such information, documentation and reports. Such reports, to the extent permitted by the rules and regulations of the Commission, will be prepared in accordance with Canadian disclosure requirements and GAAP; provided, however, that the Company shall not be obligated to file such reports with the Commission;

- (2) the Company will transmit to all Holders, in the manner and to the extent provided in Section 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act, within 30 days after the filing thereof with the Trustees, such summaries of any information, documents and reports required to be filed by the Company pursuant to paragraph (1) of this Section as may be required by rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission; and

- (3) the Company will file with the Exchanges and the Commission the reports created pursuant to Section 7.04 hereof.

ARTICLE EIGHT
CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE

SECTION 8.01 Company May Consolidate, etc., only on Certain Terms.

The Company shall not amalgamate or consolidate with or merge into or enter into any statutory arrangement with any other Person, or, directly or indirectly, convey, transfer or lease all or substantially all of its properties and assets to any Person, unless:

- (1) the Person formed by or continuing from such amalgamation or consolidation or into which the Company is merged or with which it enters into such statutory arrangement or the Person which acquires by operation of law or by conveyance or transfer, or which leases, all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company shall be a corporation, partnership or trust organized and validly existing under the laws of Canada or any province or territory thereof, the United States of America or any state thereof or the District of Columbia or, if such amalgamation, merger, consolidation, statutory arrangement or other transaction would not impair the rights of Holders, any other country, and, unless the Company is the continuing corporation, shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustees, in form satisfactory to the Trustees, the Company's obligation for the due and punctual payment of the principal of (and premium, if any), and interest, if any, on all the Securities and the performance and observance of every covenant of this Indenture on the part of the Company to be performed or observed;
- (2) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Default or Event of Default shall have happened and be continuing; and
- (3) the Company or such Person shall have delivered to the Trustees an officers' Certificate and an opinion of Counsel, each stating that such amalgamation, statutory arrangement, consolidation, merger, conveyance, transfer or lease and such supplemental indenture comply with this Article and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

SECTION 8.02 Successor Person Substituted.

Upon any amalgamation or consolidation by the Company with or merger by the Company into any other corporation or any conveyance, transfer or lease all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company to any Person in accordance with Section 8.01, the successor Person formed by such amalgamation or consolidation or into which the Company is merged, or to which such conveyance, transfer or lease is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor Person had been named as the Company herein, and in the event of any such conveyance or transfer, the Company (which term shall for this purpose mean the Person named as the "Company" in the first paragraph of this Indenture or any successor Person which shall theretofore become such in the manner described in Section 8.01), except in the case of a lease, shall be discharged of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities and the coupons and may be dissolved and liquidated.

ARTICLE NINE
SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

SECTION 9.01 Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders.

Without the consent of any Holders, the Company, when authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and the Trustees, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in form satisfactory to the Trustees, for any of the following purposes:

- (1) to evidence the succession of another Person to the Company and the assumption by any such successor of the covenants of the Company contained herein and in the Securities; or
- (2) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities and any related coupons (and if such covenants are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are being included solely for the benefit of such series) or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company; or
- (3) to add any additional Events of Default (and if such Events of Default are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such Events of Default are being included solely for the benefit of such series); or
- (4) to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture to provide that Bearer Securities may be registrable as to principal, to change or eliminate any restrictions on the payment of principal of or any premium or interest on Bearer Securities, to permit Bearer Securities to be issued in exchange for Registered Securities, to permit Bearer Securities to be issued in exchange for Bearer Securities of other authorized denominations or to permit or facilitate the issuance of Securities in uncertificated form; provided that any such action shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any series or any related coupons in any material respect; or
- (5) to change or eliminate any of the provisions of this Indenture; provided that any such change or elimination shall become effective only when there is no Security which is Outstanding of any series created prior to the execution of such supplemental indenture which is entitled to the benefit of such provision; or
- (6) to establish the form or terms of Securities of any series as permitted by Sections 2.01 and 3.01; or
- (7) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to the requirements of Section 6.10(b); or

- (8) to close this Indenture with respect to the authentication and delivery of additional series of Securities, to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision herein which may be inconsistent with any other provision herein, or to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture; provided that any such action shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any series and any related coupons in any material respect; or
- (9) to supplement any of the provisions of this Indenture to such extent as shall be necessary to permit or facilitate the defeasance and discharge of any series of Securities pursuant to Sections 4.01, 14.02 and 14.03; provided that any such action shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of such series and any related coupons or any other series of securities in any material respect; or
- (10) to modify, eliminate or add to the provisions of this Indenture to such extent as shall be necessary to effect the qualifications of this Indenture under any applicable law of the United States and Canada or of any province or territory thereof to the extent they do not conflict with the applicable law of the United States heretofore or hereafter enacted; or
- (11) to change or eliminate any provisions where such change takes effect when there are no Securities of any series outstanding under this Indenture.

SECTION 9.02 Supplemental Indentures with Consent of Holders.

With the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities affected by such supplemental indenture, by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustees, the Company, when authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and the Trustees may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture which affect such series of Securities or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series,

- (1) change the Stated Maturity of the principal of (or premium, if any) or any installment of interest on any Security of such series, or reduce the principal amount thereof (or premium, if any) or the rate of interest, if any, thereon, or change any obligation of the Company to pay Additional Amounts contemplated by Section 10.05 (except as contemplated by Section 8.01(1) and permitted by Section 9.01(1)), or reduce the amount of the principal of an Original Issue Discount Security of such series that would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.02 or the amount thereof provable in bankruptcy pursuant to Section 5.04, or adversely affect any right of repayment at the option of any Holder of any Security of such series, or change any Place of Payment where, or the Currency in which, any Security of such series or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the Stated Maturity thereof (or, in the case of redemption or repayment at the option of the Holder, on or after the Redemption Date or Repayment Date, as the case may be), or adversely affect any right to convert or exchange any Security as may be provided pursuant to Section 3.01 herein, or

- (2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture which affect such series or certain defaults applicable to such series hereunder and their consequences provided for in this Indenture, or reduce the requirements of Section 15.04 for quorum or voting with respect to Securities of such series, or
- (3) modify any of the provisions of this Section, Section 5.13 or Section 10.09, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture which affect such series cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series.

A supplemental indenture which changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other series. Any such supplemental indenture adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture, or modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series, shall not affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other series.

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Holders under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

SECTION 9.03 Execution of Supplemental Indentures.

In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article or the modifications thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustees shall be entitled to receive, in addition to the documents required by Section 1.02, and shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture. Each Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects such Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

SECTION 9.04 Effect of Supplemental Indentures.

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this Article, this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of Securities theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder shall be bound thereby.

SECTION 9.05 Conformity with Trust Indenture Legislation.

Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article shall conform to the requirements of Trust Indenture Legislation as then in effect.

SECTION 9.06 Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures.

Securities of any series authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article may, and shall if required by the Trustees, bear a notation in form approved by the Trustees as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of any series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustees and the Company, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustees in exchange for outstanding Securities of such series.

SECTION 9.07 Notice of Supplemental Indentures.

Promptly after the execution by the Company and the Trustees of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of Section 9.02, the Company shall give notice thereof to the Holders of each outstanding Security affected, in the manner provided for in Section 1.06, setting forth in general terms the substance of such supplemental indenture.

ARTICLE TEN COVENANTS

SECTION 10.01 Payment of Principal, Premium, if any, and Interest.

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of each series of Securities and any related coupons that it will duly and punctually pay the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on the Securities of that series in accordance with the terms of the Securities, any coupons appertaining thereto and this Indenture. Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01 with respect to any series of Securities, any interest installments due on Bearer Securities on or before Maturity shall be payable only upon presentation and surrender of the several coupons for such interest installments as are evidenced thereby as they severally mature.

SECTION 10.02 Maintenance of Office or Agency.

- (1) If the Securities of a series are issuable as Registered Securities, the Company will maintain in each Place of Payment for any series of Securities an office or agency where Securities of that series may be presented or surrendered for payment, where Securities of that series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange, where Securities of that series that are convertible or exchangeable may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, as applicable, and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be served and, if the Securities of a series are also issuable as Bearer Securities, where Bearer Securities of that series and related coupons may be presented or surrendered for payment in the circumstances described in Subsection 10.02(3).

- (2) If Securities of a series are issuable as Bearer Securities, the Company will maintain (A) subject to any laws or regulations applicable thereto, in a Place of Payment for that series which is located outside the United States, an office or agency where Securities of that series and related coupons may be presented and surrendered for payment; provided, however, that, if the Securities of that series are listed on any securities exchange located outside the United States and such securities exchange shall so require, the Company will maintain a Paying Agent for the Securities of that series in any required city located outside the United States so long as the Securities of that series are listed on such exchange and (B) subject to any laws or regulations applicable thereto, in a Place of Payment for that series located outside the United States an office or agency where any Registered Securities of that series may be surrendered for registration of transfer, where Securities of that series may be surrendered for exchange, where Securities of that series that are convertible and exchangeable may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, as applicable, and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be served.
- (3) The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustees of the location, and any change in the location, of such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustees with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the U.S. Trustee, except that Bearer Securities of any series and the related coupons may be presented and surrendered for payment at the offices specified in the Security, in London, and the Company hereby appoints the same as its agents to receive such respective presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.
- (4) Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, no payment of principal, premium or interest on Bearer Securities shall be made at any office or agency of the Company in the United States or by check mailed to any address in the United States or by transfer to an account maintained with a bank located in the United States; provided, however, that, if the Securities of a series are payable in Dollars, payment of principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on any Bearer Security shall be made at the office of the Company's Paying Agent in The City of New York, if (but only if) payment in Dollars of the full amount of such principals, premium or interest, as the case may be, at all offices or agencies outside the United States maintained of such purpose by the Company in accordance with this Indenture is illegal or effectively precluded by exchange controls or other similar restrictions.
- (5) The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other offices or agencies where the Securities of one or more series may be presented or surrendered for any or all such purposes and may from time to time rescind any such designation; provided, however, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligation to maintain an office or agency in accordance with the requirements set forth above for securities of any series for such purposes. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustees of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other office or agency. Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities as contemplated by Section 3.01 with respect to a series of Securities, the Company hereby initially appoints the U.S. Trustee at its Corporate Trust office as Paying Agent in such city and as its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

- (6) Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, if and so long as the Securities of any series (i) are denominated in a Currency other than Dollars or (ii) may be payable in a Currency other than Dollars, or so long as it is required under any other provision of the Indenture, then the Company will maintain with respect to each such series of Securities, or as so required, at least one Exchange Rate Agent.

SECTION 10.03 Money for Securities Payments to Be Held in Trust.

If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent with respect to any series of Securities and any related coupons, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any of the Securities of that series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 3.12(b), 3.12(d) and 3.12(e)) sufficient to pay the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on Securities of such series so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustees of its action or failure so to act.

Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any series of Securities and any related coupons, it will, prior to or on each due date of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Securities of that series, deposit with a Paying Agent a sum (in the Currency described in the preceding paragraph) sufficient to pay the principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal, premium or interest, and (unless such Paying Agent is such Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustees of its action or failure so to act.

The Company will cause each Paying Agent (other than the Trustees) for any series of Securities to execute and deliver to the Trustees an instrument in which such Paying Agent shall agree with the Trustees, subject to the provisions of this Section, that such Paying Agent will:

- (1) hold all sums held by it for the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on Securities of such series in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided;
- (2) give the Trustees notice of any default by the Company (or any other obligor upon the Securities of such series) in the making of any payment of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of such series; and

- (3) at any time during the continuance of any such default, upon the written request of the Trustees, forthwith pay to the Trustees all sums so held in trust by such Paying Agent.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustees all sums held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent, such sums to be held by the Trustees upon the same trusts as those upon which sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustees, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such sums.

Except as provided in the Securities of any series, any money deposited with the Trustees or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Security of any series, or any coupon appertaining thereto, and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal, premium or interest has become due and payable shall be paid to the Company on Company Request, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security or coupon shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustees or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust money, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease; provided, however, that the Trustees or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may at the expense of the Company cause to be published once, in an Authorized Newspaper, notice that such money remains unclaimed and that, after a date specified therein, which shall not be less than 30 days from the date of such publication, any unclaimed balance of such money then remaining will be repaid to the Company.

SECTION 10.04 Statement as to Compliance.

The Company shall deliver to the Trustees, on or before 120 days after the end of the Company's fiscal year and at any other reasonable time at the request of a Trustee, an Officers' Certificate stating that a review of the activities of the Company during such fiscal year has been made under the supervision of the signing officers with a view to determining whether the Company has kept, observed, performed and fulfilled its obligations under this Indenture, and further stating, as to each such officer signing such certificate, that the Company has kept, observed, performed and fulfilled each and every covenant contained in this Indenture and is not in default in the performance or observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions hereof (or, if a Default or Event of Default shall have occurred and is continuing, describing all such Defaults or Events of Default of which he or she may have knowledge and what action the Company is taking or propose to take with respect thereto). The Company shall deliver to the Trustees upon demand evidence in such form as the Trustees may require as to compliance by the Company with any condition or covenant of the Company set out herein relating to any action required or permitted to be taken by the Company under this Indenture or as a result of any obligation imposed by this Indenture. For purposes of this Section, such compliance shall be determined without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice under this Indenture.

SECTION 10.05 Additional Amounts.

If specified pursuant to Section 3.01, all payments made by or on behalf of the Company under or with respect to the Securities of any series will be made free and clear of and without withholding or deduction for or on account of any present or future tax, duty, levy, impost, assessment or other government charge (including penalties, interest and other liabilities related thereto) imposed or levied by or on behalf of the Government of Canada or of any province or territory thereof or by any authority or agency therein or thereof having power to tax ("Canadian Taxes"), unless the Company is required to withhold or deduct Canadian Taxes by law or by the interpretation or administration thereof by the relevant government authority or agency. If the Company is so required to withhold or deduct any amount for or on account of Canadian Taxes from any payment made under or with respect to the Securities, the Company will pay as additional interest such additional amounts ("Additional Amounts") as may be necessary so that the net amount received by each Holder after such withholding or deduction (including with respect to Additional Amounts) will not be less than the amount the Holder would have received if such Canadian Taxes had not been withheld or deducted; provided, however, that no Additional Amounts will be payable with respect to a payment made to a Holder (an "Excluded Holder") in respect of the beneficial owner thereof (i) with which the Company does not deal at arm's length (for purposes of the Income Tax Act (Canada)) at the time of the making of such payment, (ii) which is subject to such Canadian Taxes by reason of its failure to comply with any certification, identification, information, documentation or other reporting requirement if compliance is required by law, regulation, administrative practice or an applicable treaty as a precondition to exemption from, or a reduction in the rate of deduction or withholding of, such Canadian Taxes, (iii) which is subject to such Canadian Taxes by reason of its being a resident, domicile or national of, or engaged in business or maintaining a permanent establishment or other physical presence in or otherwise having some connection with Canada or any province or territory thereof otherwise than by the mere holding of Securities or the receipt of payments thereunder, or (iv) which is subject to such Canadian Taxes because it is not entitled to the benefit of an otherwise applicable tax treaty by reason of the legal nature of such Holder. The Company will make such withholding or deduction and remit the full amount deducted or withheld to the relevant authority as and when required in accordance with applicable law. The Company will pay all taxes, interest and other liabilities which arise by virtue of any failure of the Company to withhold, deduct and remit to the relevant authority on a timely basis the full amounts required in accordance with applicable law. The Company will furnish to the Holders, within 60 days after the date the payment of any Canadian Taxes is due pursuant to applicable law, certified copies of tax receipts or other satisfactory evidence of such payment by the Company.

If as a result of any payment by or on behalf of the Company under or with respect to the Securities of any series, any Holder is required to pay tax under Part XIII of the Income Tax Act (Canada) or any successor provisions in circumstances where the Company is not required to make a withholding with respect to such tax (for instance, in accordance with Section 803 of the Regulations to the Income Tax Act (Canada)), then the Company will, upon demand by any such Holder, indemnify such Holder (other than a Holder (i) with which the Company does not deal at arm's length (for the purposes of the Income Tax Act (Canada)) at the time of the making of such payment; (ii) which is subject to such Canadian Taxes by reason of its failure to comply with any certification, identification, information, documentation or other reporting requirement if compliance is required by law, regulation, administrative practice or an applicable treaty as a precondition to exemption from, or a reduction in the rate of deduction or withholding of, such Canadian Taxes for the payment of any such taxes, together with any interest, penalties and expenses in connection therewith), or (iii) which is subject to such Canadian Taxes because it is not entitled to the benefit of an otherwise applicable tax treaty by reason of the legal nature of such Holder. All such amounts shall be payable by the Company on demand and shall bear interest at the rate borne by the Securities, calculated from the date incurred by the Holder to the date paid by the Company. All such amounts shall be Additional Amounts for the purpose of this Indenture.

Promptly following the Company becoming aware that the Company will be obligated to pay Additional Amounts with respect to a payment hereunder, the Company will deliver to the Trustees and to any Paying Agent an Officers' Certificate stating the fact that such Additional Amounts will be payable and the amounts so payable. References in this Indenture to interest, principal or other payments made or to be made by the Company with respect to the Securities shall be deemed also to refer to the payment of Additional Amounts provided for in Section 3.01 that may be payable in respect thereof.

The provisions of this Section 10.05 shall survive any termination, defeasance or discharge of this Indenture.

SECTION 10.06 Payment of Taxes and Other Claims.

The Company will pay or discharge or cause to be paid or discharged, before the same shall become delinquent, (1) all material taxes, assessments and governmental charges levied or imposed upon the Company or any Subsidiary or upon the income, profits or property of the Company or any Subsidiary, and (2) all material lawful claims for labor, materials and supplies which, if unpaid, might by law become a Lien upon any property or assets of the Company or any Subsidiary; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to pay or discharge or cause to be paid or discharged any such tax, assessment, charge or claim whose amount, applicability or validity is being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings.

SECTION 10.07 Corporate Existence.

Subject to Article Eight, the Company will do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect its corporate existence and the rights (charter and statutory) and franchises of the Company; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to preserve any such right or franchise if the Company shall determine that the preservation thereof is no longer desirable in the conduct of the business of the Company and its Subsidiaries as a whole and that the loss thereof is not disadvantageous in any material respect to the Holders.

SECTION 10.08 SEC Reporting Obligations.

The Company confirms that it has either (i) a class of securities registered pursuant to Section 12 of the Exchange Act; or (ii) a reporting obligation pursuant to Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act, and has provided the Trustees with an Officers' Certificate (in a form provided by the Trustees) certifying such reporting obligation and other information as requested by the Trustees. The Company covenants that in the event that any such registration or reporting obligation shall be terminated by the Company in accordance with the Exchange Act, the Company shall promptly notify the Trustees of such termination and such other information as the Trustees may require at the time. The Company acknowledges that the Canadian Trustee is relying upon the foregoing representation and covenants in order to meet certain obligations with respect to those clients who are filing with the Commission.

SECTION 10.09 Waiver of Certain Covenants.

The Company may, with respect to any series of Securities, omit in any particular instance to comply with any term, provision or condition which affects such series set forth in Sections 10.06 and 10.07, or, as specified pursuant to Section 3.01(17) for Securities of such series, in any covenants of the Company added to this Article pursuant to Section 3.01(16) or Section 3.01(17) in connection with Securities of such series, if before the time for such compliance the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities of any series, by Act of such Holders, waive such compliance in such instance with such term, provision or condition, but no such waiver shall extend to or affect such term, provision or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustees to Holders of Securities of such series in respect of any such term, provision or condition shall remain in full force and effect.

ARTICLE ELEVEN REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES

SECTION 11.01 Applicability of Article.

Securities of any series which are redeemable before their Stated Maturity shall be redeemable in accordance with the terms of such Securities and (except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01 for Securities of any series) in accordance with this Article.

SECTION 11.02 Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustees.

The election of the Company to redeem any securities shall be evidenced by or pursuant to a Board Resolution. In case of any redemption at the election of the Company, the Company shall, at least 60 days prior to the Redemption Date fixed by the Company (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustees), notify the Trustees of such Redemption Date and of the principal amount of Securities of such series to be redeemed and shall deliver to the Trustees such documentation and records as shall enable the Trustees to select the Securities to be redeemed pursuant to Section 11.03. In the case of any redemption of Securities prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustees an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction.

SECTION 11.03 Selection by Trustees of Securities to Be Redeemed .

If less than all the Securities of any series are to be redeemed, the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected not more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date by the Trustees, from the Outstanding Securities of such series not previously called for redemption, by such method as the Trustees shall deem fair and appropriate and which may provide for the selection for redemption of portions of the principal of Securities of such series; provided, however, that no such partial redemption shall reduce the portion of the principal amount of a Security not redeemed to less than the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of such series established pursuant to Section 3.01.

The Trustees shall promptly notify the Company in writing of the Securities selected for redemption and, in the case of any Securities selected for partial redemption, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Security redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal amount of such Security which has been or is to be redeemed.

SECTION 11.04 Notice of Redemption.

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, notice of redemption shall be given in the manner provided for in Section 1.06 not less than 30 nor more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date, to each Holder of Securities to be redeemed. Failure to give notice in the manner provided in Section 1.06 to the Holder of any Securities designated for redemption as a whole or in part, or any defect in the notice to any such Holder, shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other Securities or portion thereof.

All notices of redemption shall state:

- (1) the Redemption Date,
- (2) the Redemption Price and the amount of accrued interest to the Redemption Date payable as provided in Section 11.06, if any,
- (3) if less than all the Outstanding Securities of any series are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption, the principal amounts) of the particular Securities to be redeemed,
- (4) in case any Security is to be redeemed in part only, the notice which relates to such Security shall state that on and after the Redemption Date, upon surrender of such Security, the holder will receive, without charge, a new Security or Securities of authorized denominations for the principal amount thereof remaining unredeemed,
- (5) that on the Redemption Date, the Redemption Price and accrued interest, if any, to the Redemption Date payable as provided in Section 11.06 will become due and payable upon each such Security, or the portion thereof, to be redeemed and, if applicable, that interest thereon will cease to accrue on and after said date,
- (6) the Place or Places of Payment where such Securities, together in the case of Bearer Securities with all coupons appertaining thereto, if any, maturing after the Redemption Date, are to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest, if any,
- (7) that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case,

- (8) that, unless otherwise specified in such notice, Bearer Securities of any series, if any, surrendered for redemption must be accompanied by all coupons maturing subsequent to the Redemption Date or the amount of any such missing coupon or coupons will be deducted from the Redemption Price unless security or indemnity satisfactory to the Company, the Trustees and any Paying Agent is furnished, and
- (9) if Bearer Securities of any series are to be redeemed and any Registered Securities of such series are not to be redeemed, and if such Bearer Securities may be exchanged for Registered Securities not subject to redemption on such Redemption Date pursuant to Section 3.05 or otherwise, the last date, as determined by the Company, on which such exchanges may be made.

Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed at the election of the Company shall be given by the Company or, at the Company's request, by the Trustees in the name and at the expense of the Company.

SECTION 11.05 Deposit of Redemption Price.

Prior to any Redemption Date, the Company shall deposit with a Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 10.03) an amount of money in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 3.12(b), 3.12(d) and 3.12(e)) sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of, and accrued interest, if any, on, all the Securities which are to be redeemed on that date.

SECTION 11.06 Securities Payable on Redemption Date.

Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed shall, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein specified in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 3.12(b), 3.12(d) and 3.12(e)) (together with accrued interest, if any, to the Redemption Date), and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest, if any) such Securities shall, if the same were interest-bearing, cease to bear interest and the coupons for such interest appertaining to any Bearer Securities so to be redeemed, except to the extent provided below, shall be void. Upon surrender of any such Security for redemption in accordance with said notice, together with all coupons, if any, appertaining thereto maturing after the Redemption Date, such Security shall be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price, together with accrued interest, if any, to the Redemption Date; provided, however, that installments of interest on Bearer Securities whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Redemption Date shall be payable only at an office or agency located outside the United States (except as otherwise provided in Section 10.02) and, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, only upon presentation and surrender of coupons for such interest; and provided further that installments of interest on Registered Securities whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Redemption Date shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 3.07.

If any Bearer Security surrendered for redemption shall not be accompanied by all appurtenant coupons maturing after the Redemption Date, such Security may be paid after deducting from the Redemption Price an amount equal to the face amount of all such missing coupons, or the surrender of such missing coupon or coupons may be waived by the Company and the Trustees if there be furnished to them such security or indemnity as they may require to save each of them and any Paying Agent harmless. If thereafter the Holder of such Security shall surrender to the Trustees or any Paying Agent any such missing coupon in respect of which a deduction shall have been made from the Redemption Price, such Holder shall be entitled to receive the amount so deducted; provided, however, that interest represented by coupons shall be payable only at an office or agency located outside the United States (except as otherwise provided in Section 10.02) and, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, only upon presentation and surrender of those coupons.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the principal (and premium, if any) shall, until paid, bear interest from the Redemption Date at the rate of interest or Yield to Maturity (in the case of original Issue Discount Securities) set forth in such Security.

SECTION 11.07 Securities Redeemed in Part.

Any Security which is to be redeemed only in part (pursuant to the provisions of this Article or of Article Twelve) shall be surrendered at a Place of Payment therefor (with, if the Company or the Trustees so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustees duly executed by, the Holder thereof or such Holder's attorney duly authorized in writing), and the Company shall execute, and either Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security without service charge, a new Security or Securities of the same series, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder, in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered.

SECTION 11.08 Tax Redemption.

If specified pursuant to Section 3.01, the Securities of a series will be subject to redemption at any time, in whole but not in part, at a redemption price equal to the principal amount thereof together with accrued and unpaid interest to the date fixed for redemption, upon the giving of a notice as described below, if (1) the Company determines that (a) as a result of any change in or amendment to the laws (or any regulations or rulings promulgated thereunder) of Canada or of any political subdivision or taxing authority thereof or therein affecting taxation, or any change in position regarding application or interpretation of such laws, regulations or rulings (including a holding by a court of competent jurisdiction), which change or amendment is announced or becomes effective on or after a date specified pursuant to Section 3.01, if any date is so specified, the Company has or will become obligated to pay, on the next succeeding date on which interest is due, Additional Amounts pursuant to Section 10.05 or (b) on or after a date specified pursuant to Section 3.01, any action has been taken by any taxing authority of, or any decision has been rendered by a court of competent jurisdiction in, Canada or any political subdivision or taxing authority thereof or therein, including any of those actions specified in (a) above, whether or not such action was taken or decision was rendered with respect to the Company, or any change, amendment, application or interpretation shall be proposed, which, in any such case, in the opinion of Counsel to the Company, will result in the Company becoming obligated to pay, on the next succeeding date on which interest is due, Additional Amounts with respect to any Security of such series and (2) in any such case, the Company in its business judgment determines that such obligation cannot be avoided by the use of reasonable measures available to the Company; provided, however, that (i) no such notice of redemption may be given earlier than 90 days prior to the earliest date on which the Company would be obligated to pay such Additional Amounts were a payment in respect of the Securities then due, and (ii) at the time such notice of redemption is given, such obligation to pay such Additional Amounts remains in effect.

In the event that the Company elects to redeem the Securities pursuant to the provisions set forth in the preceding paragraph, the Company shall deliver to the Trustees a certificate, signed by an authorized officer, stating that the Company is entitled to redeem the Securities pursuant to their terms.

ARTICLE TWELVE
SINKING FUNDS

SECTION 12.01 Applicability of Article.

Retirements of Securities of any series pursuant to any sinking fund shall be made in accordance with the terms of such Securities and (except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01 for Securities of any series) in accordance with this Article.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as a “mandatory sinking fund payment”, and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as an “optional sinking fund payment”. If provided for by the terms of Securities of any series, the cash amount of any mandatory sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 12.02. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any series as provided for by the terms of Securities of such series.

SECTION 12.02 Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.

Subject to Section 12.03, in lieu of making all or any part of any mandatory sinking fund payment with respect to any Securities of a series in cash, the Company may at its option (1) deliver to the Trustees Outstanding Securities of a series (other than any previously called for redemption) theretofore purchased or otherwise acquired by the Company together in the case of any Bearer Securities of such series with all un-matured coupons appertaining thereto, and/or (2) receive credit for the principal amount of Securities of such series which have been previously delivered to the Trustees by the Company or for Securities of such series which have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any mandatory sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of the same series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as provided for by the terms of such series; provided, however, that such Securities have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustees at the Redemption Price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such mandatory sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

SECTION 12.03 Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.

Not less than 60 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any series of Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustees an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment for that series pursuant to the terms of that series, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 3.12(b), 3.12(d) and 3.12(e)) and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering or crediting Securities of that series pursuant to Section 12.02 (which Securities will, if not previously delivered, accompany such certificate) and whether the Company intends to exercise its right to make a permitted optional sinking fund payment with respect to such series.

Such certificate shall be irrevocable and upon its delivery the Company shall be obligated to make the cash payment or payments therein referred to, if any, on or before the next succeeding sinking fund payment date. In the case of the failure of the Company to deliver such certificate, the sinking fund payment due on the next succeeding sinking fund payment date for that series shall be paid entirely in cash and shall be sufficient to redeem the principal amount of such Securities subject to a mandatory sinking fund payment without the option to deliver or credit Securities as provided in Section 12.02 and without the right to make any optional sinking fund payment, if any, with respect to such series.

Not more than 60 days before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustees shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 11.03 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 11.04. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Sections 11.06 and 11.07.

Prior to any sinking fund payment date, the Company shall pay to the Trustees or a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 10.03) in cash a sum equal to any interest that will accrue to the date fixed for redemption of Securities or portions thereof to be redeemed on such sinking fund payment date pursuant to this Section.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, with respect to a sinking fund for any series of Securities, if at any time the amount of cash to be paid into such sinking fund on the next succeeding sinking fund payment date, together with any unused balance of any preceding sinking fund payment or payments for such series, does not exceed in the aggregate \$100,000, the Trustees, unless requested by the Company, shall not give the next succeeding notice of the redemption of Securities of such series through the operation of the sinking fund. Any such unused balance of moneys deposited in such sinking fund shall be added to the sinking fund payment for such series to be made in cash on the next succeeding sinking fund payment date or, at the request of the Company, shall be applied at any time or from time to time to the purchase of Securities of such series, by public or private purchase, in the open market or otherwise, at a purchase price for such Securities (excluding accrued interest and brokerage commissions, for which the Trustees or any Paying Agent will be reimbursed by the Company) not in excess of the principal amount thereof.

ARTICLE THIRTEEN
REPAYMENT AT OPTION OF HOLDERS

SECTION 13.01 Applicability of Article.

Repayment of Securities of any series before their Stated Maturity at the option of Holders thereof shall be made in accordance with the terms of such Securities and (except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01 for Securities of any series) in accordance with this Article.

SECTION 13.02 Repayment of Securities.

Securities of any series subject to repayment in whole or in part at the option of the Holders thereof will, unless otherwise provided in the terms of such Securities, be repaid at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, together with interest, if any, thereon accrued to the Repayment Date specified in or pursuant to the terms of such Securities. The Company covenants that on or before the Repayment Date it will deposit with a Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 10.03) an amount of money in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 3.12(b), 3.12(d) and 3.12(e)) sufficient to pay the principal (or, if so provided by the terms of the Securities of any series, a percentage of the principal) of and (except if the Repayment Date shall be an Interest Payment Date) accrued interest, if any, on, all the Securities or portions thereof, as the case may be, to be repaid on such date.

SECTION 13.03 Exercise of Option.

Securities of any series subject to repayment at the option of the Holders thereof will contain an "Option to Elect Repayment" form on the reverse of such Securities. To be repaid at the option of the Holder, any Security so providing for such repayment, with the "Option to Elect Repayment" form on the reverse of such Security duly completed by the Holder (or by the Holder's attorney duly authorized in writing), must be received by the Company at the Place of Payment therefor specified in the terms of such Security (or at such other place or places which the Company shall from time to time notify the Holders of such Securities) not earlier than 45 days nor later than 30 days prior to the Repayment Date. If less than the entire principal amount of such Security is to be repaid in accordance with the terms of such Security, the principal amount of such Security to be repaid, in increments of the minimum denomination for Securities of such series, and the denomination or denominations of the Security or Securities to be issued to the Holder for the portion of the principal amount of such Security surrendered that is not to be repaid, must be specified. The principal amount of any Security providing for repayment at the option of the Holder thereof may not be repaid in part if, following such repayment, the unpaid principal amount of such Security would be less than the minimum authorized denomination of Securities of the series of which such Security to be repaid is a part. Except as otherwise may be provided by the terms of any Security providing for repayment at the option of the Holder thereof, exercise of the repayment option by the Holder shall be irrevocable unless waived by the Company.

SECTION 13.04 When Securities Presented for Repayment Become Due and Payable.

If Securities of any series providing for repayment at the option of the Holders thereof shall have been surrendered as provided in this Article and as provided by or pursuant to the terms of such Securities, such Securities or the portions thereof, as the case may be, to be repaid shall become due and payable and shall be paid by the Company on the Repayment Date therein specified, and on and after such Repayment Date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of such Securities on such Repayment Date) such Securities shall, if the same were interest-bearing, cease to bear interest and the coupons for such interest appertaining to any Bearer Securities so to be repaid, except to the extent provided below, shall be void. Upon surrender of any such Security for repayment in accordance with such provisions, together with all coupons, if any, appertaining thereto maturing after the Repayment Date, the principal amount of such Security so to be repaid shall be paid by the Company, together with accrued interest, if any, to the Repayment Date; provided, however, that coupons whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Repayment Date shall be payable only at an office or agency located outside the United States (except as otherwise provided in Section 10.02) and, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, only upon presentation and surrender of such coupons; and provided further that, in the case of Registered Securities, installments of interest, if any, whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Repayment Date shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 3.07.

If any Bearer Security surrendered for repayment shall not be accompanied by all appurtenant coupons maturing after the Repayment Date, such Security may be paid after deducting from the amount payable therefor as provided in Section 13.02 an amount equal to the face amount of all such missing coupons, or the surrender of such missing coupon or coupons may be waived by the Company and the Trustees if there be furnished to them such security or indemnity as they may require to save each of them and any Paying Agent harmless. If thereafter the Holder of such Security shall surrender to the Trustees or any Paying Agent any such missing coupon in respect of which a deduction shall have been made as provided in the preceding sentence, such Holder shall be entitled to receive the amount so deducted; provided, however, that interest represented by coupons shall be payable only at an office or agency located outside the United States (except as otherwise provided in Section 10.02) and, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, only upon presentation and surrender of those coupons.

If the principal amount of any Security surrendered for repayment shall not be so repaid upon surrender thereof, such principal amount (together with interest, if any, thereon accrued to such Repayment Date) shall, until paid, bear interest from the Repayment Date at the rate of interest or Yield to maturity (in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) set forth in such Security.

SECTION 13.05 Securities Repaid in Part.

Upon surrender of any Registered Security which is to be repaid in part only, the Company shall execute and either Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security, without service charge and at the expense of the Company, a new Registered Security or Securities of the same series, of any authorized denomination specified by the Holder, in an aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the portion of the principal of such Security so surrendered which is not to be repaid.

ARTICLE FOURTEEN DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE

SECTION 14.01 Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01 for Securities of any series, the provisions of this Article shall apply to each series of Securities, and the Company may, at its option, effect defeasance (as defined below) of the Securities of or within a series under Section 14.02, or covenant defeasance (as defined below) of or within a series under Section 14.03 in accordance with the terms of such Securities and in accordance with this Article.

SECTION 14.02 Defeasance and Discharge.

Upon the Company's exercise of the above option applicable to this Section with respect to any Securities of or within a series, the Company shall be deemed to have been discharged from its obligations with respect to such Outstanding Securities and any related coupons on the date the conditions set forth in Section 14.04 are satisfied (hereinafter, "defeasance"). For this purpose, such defeasance means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by such Outstanding Securities and any related coupons, which shall thereafter be deemed to be "Outstanding" only for the purposes of Section 14.05 and the other Sections of this Indenture referred to in (A) and (B) below, and to have satisfied all its other obligations under such Securities and any related coupons and this Indenture insofar as such Securities and any related coupons are concerned (and the Trustees, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except for the following which shall survive until otherwise terminated or discharged hereunder: (A) the rights of Holders of such Outstanding Securities and any related coupons to receive, solely from the trust fund described in Section 14.04 and as more fully set forth in such Section, payments in respect of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on such Securities and any related coupons when such payments are due, (B) the Company's obligations with respect to such Securities under Sections 3.04, 3.05, 3.06, 10.02 and 10.03 and with respect to the payment of Additional Amounts, if any, on such Securities as contemplated by Section 10.05, (C) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustees hereunder and (D) this Article. Subject to compliance with this Article, the Company may exercise its option under this Section notwithstanding the prior exercise of its option under Section 14.03 with respect to such Securities and any related coupons.

SECTION 14.03 Covenant Defeasance.

Upon the Company's exercise of the above option applicable to this Section with respect to any Securities of or within a series, the Company shall be released from its obligations under Sections 10.06 and 10.07, and, if specified pursuant to Section 3.01, its obligations under any other covenant, with respect to such Outstanding Securities and any related coupons on and after the date the conditions set forth in Section 14.04 are satisfied (hereinafter, "covenant defeasance"), and such Securities and any related coupons shall thereafter be deemed not to be "Outstanding" for the purposes of any direction, waiver, consent or declaration or Act of Holders (and the consequences of any thereof) in connection with such covenants, but shall continue to be deemed "Outstanding" for all other purposes hereunder. For this purpose, such covenant defeasance means that, with respect to such outstanding Securities and any related coupons, the Company may omit to comply with and shall have no liability in respect of any term, condition or limitation set forth in any such covenant, whether directly or indirectly, by reason of any reference elsewhere herein to any such covenant or by reason of reference in any such covenant to any other provision herein or in any other document and such omission to comply shall not constitute a Default or an Event of Default under clauses (4), (5) or (9) of Section 5.01 or otherwise, as the case may be, but, except as specified above, the remainder of this Indenture and such Securities and any related coupons shall be unaffected thereby.

SECTION 14.04 Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.

The following shall be the conditions to application of either Section 14.02 or Section 14.03 to any Outstanding Securities of or within a series and any related coupons:

- (1) The Company shall irrevocably have deposited or caused to be deposited with either Trustee (or another trustee satisfying the requirements of Section 6.08 who shall agree to comply with the provisions of this Article applicable to it) as trust funds in trust for the purpose of making the following payments, specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefit of the Holders of such Securities and any related coupons, (A) an amount (in such Currency in which such Securities and any related coupons are then specified as payable at Stated Maturity), or (B) Government Obligations applicable to such Securities (determined on the basis of the Currency in which such Securities are then specified as payable at Stated Maturity) which through the scheduled payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than one day before the due date of any payment of principal of and premium, if any, and interest, if any, under such Securities and any related coupons, money in an amount, or (C) a combination thereof, sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustees, to pay and discharge, and which shall be applied by the Trustees (or other qualifying trustee) to pay and discharge, (i) the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on such Outstanding Securities and any related coupons on the Stated Maturity (or Redemption Date, if applicable) of such principal (and premium, if any) or installment of interest, if any, (ii) any mandatory sinking fund payments or analogous payments applicable to such Outstanding Securities and any related coupons on the day on which such payments are due and payable in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and of such Securities and any related coupons, and (iii) all amounts due the Trustees under Section 6.07; provided that the Trustees shall have been irrevocably instructed to apply such money or the proceeds of such Government Obligations to said payments with respect to such Securities and any related coupons. Before such a deposit, the Company may give to the Trustees, in accordance with Section 11.02 hereof, a notice of its election to redeem all or any portion of such Outstanding Securities at a future date in accordance with the terms of the Securities of such series and Article Eleven hereof, which notice shall be irrevocable. Such irrevocable redemption notice, if given, shall be given effect in applying the foregoing.

- (2) No Default or Event of Default with respect to such Securities or any related coupons shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit or, insofar as clauses (7) and (8) of Section 5.01 are concerned, at any time during the period ending on the 91st day after the date of such deposit (it being understood that this condition shall not be deemed satisfied until the expiration of such period).
- (3) Such defeasance or covenant defeasance shall not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, this Indenture or any other material agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which it is bound.
- (4) In the case of an election under Section 14.02, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustees an Opinion of Counsel in the United States stating that (x) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling, or (y) since the date of execution of this Indenture, there has been a change in the applicable U.S. federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion shall confirm that, the Holders of such Outstanding Securities and any related coupons will not recognize income, gain or loss for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a result of such defeasance and will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such defeasance had not occurred.
- (5) In the case of an election under Section 14.03, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustees an Opinion of Counsel in the United States to the effect that the Holders of such Outstanding Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a result of such covenant defeasance and will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such covenant defeasance had not occurred.
- (6) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustees an Opinion of Counsel in Canada or a ruling from the Canada Revenue Agency to the effect that the Holders of such Outstanding Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for Canadian federal, provincial or territorial income tax or other tax purposes as a result of such defeasance or covenant defeasance, as applicable, and will be subject to Canadian federal or provincial income tax and other tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case had such defeasance or covenant defeasance, as applicable, not occurred (and for the purposes of such opinion, such Canadian counsel shall assume that Holders of the Securities include Holders who are not resident in Canada).

- (7) The Company is not an “insolvent person” within the meaning of the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act (Canada) on the date of such deposit or at any time during the period ending on the 91st day after the date of such deposit (it being understood that this condition shall not be deemed satisfied until the expiration of such period).
- (8) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Section, such defeasance or covenant defeasance shall be effected in compliance with any additional or substitute terms, conditions or limitations in connection therewith pursuant to Section 3.01.
- (9) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustees an Officers’ Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent provided for, relating to either the defeasance under Section 14.02 or the covenant defeasance under Section 14.03 (as the case may be), have been complied with.

SECTION 14.05 Deposited Money and Government Obligations to Be Held in Trust; Other Miscellaneous Provisions.

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 10.03, all money and Government Obligations (or other property as may be provided pursuant to Section 3.01) (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with a Trustee (or other qualifying trustee, collectively, for purposes of this Section, the “Trustee”) pursuant to Section 14.04 in respect of such Outstanding Securities and any related coupons shall be held in trust and applied by such Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities and any related coupons and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as such Trustee may determine, to the Holders of such Securities and any related coupons of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Security pursuant to Section 3.01, if, after a deposit referred to in Section 14.04(1) has been made, (a) the Holder of a Security in respect of which such deposit was made is entitled to, and does, elect pursuant to Section 3.12(b) or the terms of such Security to receive payment in a Currency other than that in which the deposit pursuant to Section 14.04(1) has been made in respect of such Security, or (b) a Conversion Event occurs as contemplated in Section 3.12(d) or 3.12(e) or by the terms of any Security in respect of which the deposit pursuant to Section 14.04(1) has been made, the indebtedness represented by such Security and any related coupons shall be deemed to have been, and will be, fully discharged and satisfied through the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on such Security as they become due out of the proceeds yielded by converting (from time to time as specified below in the case of any such election) the amount or other property deposited in respect of such Security into the Currency in which such Security becomes payable as a result of such election or Conversion Event based on the applicable Market Exchange Rate for such Currency in effect on the third Business Day prior to each payment date, except, with respect to a Conversion Event, for such Currency in effect (as nearly as feasible) at the time of the Conversion Event.

The Company shall pay and indemnify such Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the Government obligations deposited pursuant to Section 14.04 or the principal and interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the Holders of such Outstanding Securities and any related coupons.

Anything in this Article to the contrary notwithstanding, such Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money or Government Obligations (or other property and any proceeds therefrom) held by it as provided in Section 14.04 which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to such Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect an equivalent defeasance or covenant defeasance, as applicable, in accordance with this Article.

SECTION 14.06 Reinstatement.

If a Trustee or any Paying Agent is unable to apply any money in accordance with Section 14.05 by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, then the Company's obligations under this Indenture and such Securities and any related coupons shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to Section 14.02 or 14.03, as the case may be, until such time as such Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all such money in accordance with Section 14.05; provided, however, that if the Company makes any payment of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any such Security or any related coupon following the reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights of the Holders of such Securities and any related coupons to receive such payment from the money held by such Trustee or Paying Agent.

ARTICLE FIFTEEN
MEETINGS OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES

SECTION 15.01 Purposes for Which Meetings May Be Called.

If Securities of a series are issuable as Bearer Securities, a meeting of Holders of Securities of such series may be called at any time and from time to time pursuant to this Article to make, give or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be made, given or taken by Holders of Securities of such series.

SECTION 15.02 Call, Notice and Place of Meetings.

- (1) The Trustees may at any time call a meeting of Holders of Securities of any series for any purpose specified in Section 15.01, to be held at such time and at such place in The City of New York, in Toronto or in London as the Trustees shall determine. Notice of every meeting of Holders of Securities of any series, setting forth the time and the place of such meeting and in general terms the action proposed to be taken at such meeting, shall be given, in the manner provided for in Section 1.06, not less than 21 nor more than 180 days prior to the date fixed for the meeting.

- (2) In case at any time the Company, pursuant to a Board Resolution, or the Holders of at least 10% in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of any series shall have requested the Trustees to call a meeting of the Holders of Securities of such series for any purpose specified in Section 15.01, by written request setting forth in reasonable detail the action proposed to be taken at the meeting, and the Trustees shall not have made the first publication of the notice of such meeting within 21 days after receipt of such request or shall not thereafter proceed to cause the meeting to be held as provided herein, then the Company or the Holders of Securities of such series in the amount above specified, as the case may be, may determine the time and the place in The City of New York, in Toronto or in London for such meeting and may call such meeting for such purposes by giving notice thereof as provided in paragraph (a) of this Section.

SECTION 15.03 Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings.

To be entitled to vote at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series, a Person shall be (1) a Holder of one or more Outstanding Securities of such series, or (2) a Person appointed by an instrument in writing as proxy for a Holder or Holders of one or more Outstanding Securities of such series by such Holder of Holders. The only Persons who shall be entitled to be present or to speak at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series shall be the Persons entitled to vote at such meeting and their counsel, any representatives of the Trustees and their counsel and any representatives of the Company and its counsel.

SECTION 15.04 Quorum; Action.

The Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series shall constitute a quorum for a meeting of Holders of Securities of such series; provided, however, that, if any action is to be taken at such meeting with respect to a consent or waiver which this Indenture expressly provides may be given by the Holders of not less than a specified percentage in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of a series, the Persons entitled to vote such specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series shall constitute a quorum. In the absence of a quorum within 30 minutes of the time appointed for any such meeting, the meeting shall, if convened at the request of Holders of Securities of such series, be dissolved. In any other case the meeting may be adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such meeting. In the absence of a quorum at any such adjourned meeting, such adjourned meeting may be further adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such adjourned meeting. Notice of the reconvening of any adjourned meeting shall be given as provided in Section 15.02(a), except that such notice need be given only once not less than five days prior to the date on which the meeting is scheduled to be reconvened. Notice of the reconvening of any adjourned meeting shall state expressly the percentage, as provided above, of the principal amount of the outstanding Securities of such series which shall constitute a quorum.

Subject to the foregoing, at the reconvening of any meeting adjourned for lack of a quorum the Persons entitled to vote 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities at the time shall constitute a quorum for the taking of any action set forth in the notice of the original meeting.

Except as limited by the proviso to Section 9.02, any resolution presented to a meeting or adjourned meeting duly reconvened at which a quorum is present as aforesaid may be adopted by the affirmative vote of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Securities of such series who have casted their votes; provided, however, that, except as limited by the proviso to Section 9.02, any resolution with respect to any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action which this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of a specified percentage, which is less than a majority, in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series may be adopted at a meeting or an adjourned meeting duly reconvened and at which a quorum is present as aforesaid by the affirmative vote of the Holders of not less than such specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series.

Any resolution passed or decision taken at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series duly held in accordance with this Section shall be binding on all the Holders of Securities of such series and the related coupons, whether or not present or represented at the meeting.

Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section, if any action is to be taken at a meeting of Holders of Securities of any series with respect to any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action that this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of a specified percentage in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities affected thereby, or of the Holders of such series and one or more additional series:

- (i) there shall be no minimum quorum requirement for such meeting; and
- (ii) the principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series that vote in favor of such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action shall be taken into account in determining whether such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action has been made, given or taken under this Indenture.

SECTION 15.05 Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings.

- (1) Notwithstanding any provisions of this Indenture, the Trustees may make such reasonable regulations as it may deem advisable for any meeting of Holders of Securities of a series in regard to proof of the holding of Securities of such series and of the appointment of proxies and in regard to the appointment and duties of inspectors of votes, the submission and examination of proxies, certificates and other evidence of the right to vote, and such other matters concerning the conduct of the meeting as it shall deem appropriate. Except as otherwise permitted or required by any such regulations, the holding of Securities shall be proved in the manner specified in Section 1.04 and the appointment of any proxyholder shall be proved in the manner specified in Section 1.04 or by having the signature of the person executing the proxy witnessed or guaranteed by any trust company, bank or banker authorized by Section 1.04 to certify to the holding of Bearer Securities. Such regulations may provide that written instruments appointing proxyholders, regular on their face, may be presumed valid and genuine without the proof specified in Section 1.04 or other proof.

- (2) The Trustees shall, by an instrument in writing appoint a temporary chairman of the meeting, unless the meeting shall have been called by the Company or by Holders of Securities as provided in Section 15.02(b), in which case the Company or the Holders of Securities of the series calling the meeting, as the case may be, shall in like manner appoint a temporary chairman. A permanent chairman and a permanent secretary of the meeting shall be elected by vote of the Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series represented at the meeting.
- (3) At any meeting each Holder of a Security of such series or proxy shall be entitled to one vote for each \$1,000 principal amount of Outstanding Securities of such series held or represented by him (determined as specified in the definition of "Outstanding" in Section 1.01); provided, however, that no vote shall be cast or counted at any meeting in respect of any Security challenged as not outstanding and ruled by the chairman of the meeting to be not Outstanding. The chairman of the meeting shall have no right to vote, except as a Holder of a Security of such series or a proxy.
- (4) Any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series duly called pursuant to Section 15.02 at which a quorum is present may be adjourned from time to time by Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series represented at the meeting; and the meeting may be held as so adjourned without further notice.

SECTION 15.06 Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings.

The vote upon any resolution submitted to any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series shall be by written ballots on which shall be subscribed the signatures of the Holders of Securities of such series or of their representatives by proxy and the principal amounts and serial numbers, if any, of the Outstanding Securities of such series held or represented by them. The permanent chairman of the meeting shall appoint two inspectors of votes who shall count all votes cast at the meeting for or against any resolution and who shall make and file with the secretary of the meeting their verified written reports in duplicate of all votes cast at the meeting. A record, at least in duplicate, of the proceedings of each meeting of Holders of Securities of any series shall be prepared by the secretary of the meeting and there shall be attached to said record the original reports of the inspectors of votes on any vote by ballot taken thereat and affidavits by one or more persons having knowledge of the facts setting forth a copy of the notice of the meeting and showing that said notice was given as provided in Section 15.02 and, if applicable, Section 15.04. Each copy shall be signed and verified by the affidavits of the permanent chairman and secretary of the meeting and one such copy shall be delivered to the Company, and another to the Trustees to be preserved by the Trustees, the latter to have attached thereto the ballots voted at the meeting. Any record so signed and verified shall be conclusive evidence of the matters therein stated.

SECTION 15.07 Waiver of Jury Trial.

Each of the Company and the Trustee hereby irrevocably waives, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, any and all right to trial by jury in any legal proceeding arising out of or relating to this Indenture, the Securities or the transactions contemplated hereby.

SECTION 15.08 Counterparts.

This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts (either by facsimile or by original manual signature), each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same Indenture.

SECTION 15.09 Force Majeure.

Except for the payment obligations of the Company contained herein, neither the Company nor the Trustees shall be liable to each other, or held in breach of this Indenture, if prevented, hindered, or delayed in the performance or observance of any provision contained herein by reason of act of God, riots, terrorism, acts of war, epidemics, governmental action or judicial order, earthquakes, or any other similar causes (including, but not limited to, mechanical, electronic or communication interruptions, disruptions or failures). Performance times under this Indenture shall be extended for a period of time equivalent to the time lost because of any delay that is excusable under this Section.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed, and their respective corporate seals to be hereunto affixed and attested, all as of the day and year first above written.

ZYMEWORKS INC.

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

_____,
as U.S. Trustee

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

_____,
as Canadian Trustee

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: Authorized Signing Officer

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: Authorized Signing Officer

EXHIBIT A

FORMS OF CERTIFICATION

EXHIBIT A-1

FORM OF CERTIFICATE TO BE GIVEN BY
PERSON ENTITLED TO RECEIVE BEARER SECURITY
OR TO OBTAIN INTEREST PAYABLE PRIOR
TO THE EXCHANGE DATE

CERTIFICATE

ZYMEWORKS INC.
% Notes due

This is to certify that as of the date hereof, and except as set forth below, the above-captioned Securities held by you for our account (i) are owned by any person(s) that is not a citizen or resident of the United States; a corporation or partnership (including any entity treated as a corporation or partnership for United States Federal income tax purposes) created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, any state thereof or the District of Columbia unless, in the case of a partnership, Treasury Regulations provide otherwise; any estate whose income is subject to United States Federal income tax regardless of its source or; a trust if (A) a United States court can exercise primary supervision over the trust's administration and one or more United States persons are authorized to control all substantial decisions of the trust or (B) it was in existence on August 20, 1996 and has a valid election in effect under applicable Treasury Regulations to be treated as a United States person ("United States persons(s)"), (ii) are owned by United States person(s) that are (a) foreign branches of United States financial institutions (financial institutions, as defined in United States Treasury Regulation Section 1.165-12(c)(1)(v) are herein referred to as "financial institutions") purchasing for their own account or for resale, or (b) United States person(s) who acquired the Securities through foreign branches of United States financial institutions and who hold the Securities through such United States financial institutions on the date hereof (and in either case (a) or (b), each such United States financial institution hereby agrees, on its own behalf or through its agent, that you may advise Zymeworks Inc. or its agent that such financial institution will comply with the requirements of Section 165(j)(3)(A), (B) or (C) of the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the regulations thereunder), or (iii) are owned by United States or foreign financial institution(s) for purposes of resale during the restricted period (as defined in United States Treasury Regulation Section 1.163-5(c)(2)(i)(D)(7)), and, in addition, if the owner is a United States or foreign financial institution described in clause (iii) above (whether or not also described in clause (i) or (ii)), this is to further certify that such financial institution has not acquired the Securities for purposes of resale directly or indirectly to a United States person or to a person within the United States or its possessions.

As used herein, "United States" means the United States of America (including the states and the District of Columbia); and its "possessions" include Puerto Rico, the U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, Wake Island and the Northern Mariana Islands.

We undertake to advise you promptly by tested telex on or prior to the date on which you intend to submit your certification relating to the above-captioned Securities held by you for our account in accordance with your operating procedures if any applicable statement herein is not correct on such date, and in the absence of any such notification it may be assumed that this certification applies as of such date.

This certificate excepts and does not relate to U.S. \$ _____ of such interest in the above-captioned Securities in respect of which we are not able to certify and as to which we understand an exchange for an interest in a permanent global security or an exchange for and delivery of definitive Securities (or, if relevant, collection of any interest) cannot be made until we do so certify.

We understand that this certificate may be required in connection with certain tax legislation in the United States. If administrative or legal proceedings are commenced or threatened in connection with which this certificate is or would be relevant, we irrevocably authorize you to produce this certificate or a copy thereof to any interested party in such proceedings.

Dated:
[To be dated no earlier than the 15th day prior to (i) the Exchange Date or (ii) the relevant Interest Payment Date occurring prior to the Exchange Date, applicable]

[Name of Person Making Certification]

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

EXHIBIT A-2

FORM OF CERTIFICATE TO BE GIVEN BY EUROCLEAR AND CLEARSTREAM
IN CONNECTION WITH THE EXCHANGE OF A PORTION OF A
TEMPORARY GLOBAL SECURITY OR TO OBTAIN INTEREST
PAYABLE PRIOR TO THE EXCHANGE DATE

CERTIFICATE ZYMEWORKS INC.

% Notes due

This is to certify that based solely on written certifications that we have received in writing, by tested telex or by electronic transmission from each of the persons appearing in our records as persons entitled to a portion of the principal amount set forth below (our "Member Organizations") substantially in the form attached hereto, as of the date hereof, U.S. \$ _____ principal amount of the above-captioned Securities (i) is owned by any person(s) that is not a citizen or resident of the United States; a corporation or partnership (including any entity treated as a corporation or partnership for United States Federal income tax purposes) created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, any state thereof or the District of Columbia unless, in the case of a partnership, Treasury Regulations provide otherwise; any estate whose income is subject to United States Federal income tax regardless of its source or; a trust if (A) a United States court can exercise primary supervision over the trust's administration and one or more United States persons are authorized to control all substantial decisions of the trust or (B) it was in existence on August 20, 1996 and has a valid election in effect under applicable Treasury Regulations to be treated as a United States person ("United States person(s)"), (ii) is owned by United States person(s) that are (a) foreign branches of United States financial institutions (financial institutions, as defined in U.S. Treasury Regulation Section 1.165-12(c)(1)(v) are herein referred to as "financial institutions") purchasing for their own account or for resale, or (b) United States person(s) who acquired the Securities through foreign branches of United States financial institutions and who hold the Securities through such United States financial institutions on the date hereof (and in either case (a) or (b), each such financial institution has agreed, on its own behalf or through its agent, that we may advise Zymeworks Inc. or its agent that such financial institution will comply with the requirements of Section 165(j)(3)(A), (B) or (C) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the regulations thereunder), or (iii) is owned by United States or foreign financial institution(s) for purposes of resale during the restricted period (as defined in United States Treasury Regulation Section 1.163-5(c)(2)(i)(D)(7)) and, to the further effect, that financial institutions described in clause (iii) above (whether or not also described in clause (i) or (ii)) have certified that they have not acquired the Securities for purposes of resale directly or indirectly to a United States person or to a person within the United States or its possessions.

As used herein, "United States" means the United States of America (including the states and the District of Columbia); and its "possessions" include Puerto Rico, the U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, Wake Island and the Northern Mariana Islands.

We further certify that (i) we are not making available herewith for exchange (or, if relevant, collection of any interest) any portion of the temporary global Security representing the above-captioned Securities excepted in the above-referenced certificates of member Organizations and (ii) as of the date hereof we have not received any notification from any of our Member organizations to the effect that the statements made by such Member organizations with respect to any portion of the part submitted herewith for exchange (or, if relevant, collection of any interest) are no longer true and cannot be relied upon as of the date hereof.

We understand that this certification is required in connection with certain tax legislation in the United States. If administrative or legal proceedings are commenced or threatened in connection with which this certificate is or would be relevant, we irrevocably authorize you to produce this certificate or a copy thereof to any interested party in such proceedings.

Dated:
[To be dated no earlier than the 15th day prior to (i) the Exchange Date or (ii) the relevant Interest Payment Date occurring prior to the Exchange Date, applicable]

[MORGAN GUARANTY TRUST
COMPANY OF NEW YORK, BRUSSELS
OFFICE, as Operator of the Euroclear
System]
[CLEARSTREAM BANKING]

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____